

Oracle[®] Marketing Online

Concepts and Procedures

Release 11*i*

February 2002

Part No. A95205-02

ORACLE[®]

Copyright © 1996, 2001, Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information of Oracle Corporation; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly or decompilation of the Programs, except to the extent required to obtain interoperability with other independently created software or as specified by law, is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. Oracle Corporation does not warrant that this document is error-free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Oracle Corporation.

If the Programs are delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing or using the programs on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

Restricted Rights Notice Programs delivered subject to the DOD FAR Supplement are "commercial computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs, including documentation, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement. Otherwise, Programs delivered subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulations are "restricted computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs shall be subject to the restrictions in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June, 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee's responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and Oracle Corporation disclaims liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments	xvii
Preface.....	xix
Structure.....	xix
Intended Audience	xx
Documentation Accessibility	xx
Other Information Sources	xxi
Do Not Use Database Tools to Modify Oracle Applications Data	xxiii
About Oracle	xxiv
Understanding Oracle Marketing Online	
Overview.....	1
Acronyms.....	2
Navigating Through Oracle Marketing Online	3
Tabs, Subtabs and Links	4
Side Panel Menus	4
Pages with Two Levels of Tabs and a Side Panel Menu.....	4
Pages with Two Levels of Tabs and Links.....	5
Folders.....	5
Bins	5
Navigational Path Conventions.....	6
Logging In.....	6
The Home Page	6
Home Page Bins, Reports and Charts.....	6

Profiles.....	7
Finding Information	7
Views of Marketing Objects	8
Campaign Views.....	8
Quick Find	9
Advanced Search	9
Getting Help	9
Marketing Campaigns.....	9
Campaign and Event Approvals.....	10
Theme Approval.....	10
Budget Approval	10
Executing Marketing Activities Through Schedules	11
Offers	11
Events.....	12
Events Overview.....	12
Event Building Blocks	13
Deliverables	13
Deliverables that use budgets:.....	13
Deliverables that do not use budgets:.....	14
Deliverable Messages.....	14
eMerchandising.....	15
General Concepts.....	15
Merchant Process Flows	18
Roles	18
Web Postings	19
Universal versus Rule-based Postings.....	19
Merchandising Strategies	21
Targeting Rules	24
Display Priorities	25
Display Priorities for Web Ads.....	26
Use of Product Display Priorities for other content types.....	27
Web Placements	27
Site.....	27
Page.....	27
Out-of-box iStore Pages.....	27

Location.....	28
Page Parameters.....	28
Style	29
Advantages of Pages and Placements	30
Budgets.....	30
Budget Hierarchies.....	31
Budgets Management	32
Fixed and Accrual Budgets	33
More on Fixed Budgets.....	33
More on Accrual Budgets.....	34
Threshold Alerts	34
Budget Allocations	34
Budget Checkbooks.....	35
Sort Options for Views	35
Cell Drill-Downs.....	37
Adjustment Support.....	38
Manual Adjustments.....	39
Automatic Adjustments	39
Rules for Adjustment.....	40
Budgets Side Panel Menu Items.....	40
Claims.....	41
Receive Payment Requests.....	42
Proof of Performance	42
Process Payments	42
Document Payments.....	43
Claim Lines Page	43
Associate (Claim) Page	43
Split Claim	43
Perform Split	43
Claims Settlement.....	44
Settlement Codes.....	44
Clear Duplicate Claims.....	44
Claims Side Panel Menu Items.....	44
Administration.....	46
Audience	46

Launching Discoverer	49
Data Sources	50
Using Multiple Data Sources	51
Workbooks, Worksheets, and Oracle Web Discoverer	51
Folders, Items, and the End User Layer (EUL)	51
Worksheets	52
Workbooks.....	52
Conditions	52
List Management Business Areas.....	52
Person.....	52
Organization.....	54
Partners	55
Partner Detail	56
Partner Contacts.....	56
Lists.....	56
Reusing and Regenerating Lists	57
Analytics.....	57
Models.....	57
Model Templates	58
Building the Model.....	58
Evaluating the Model.....	59
Improving Your Model's Results	59
Scoring a Target Population with Your Model	60
Model Status.....	61
About the Performance Matrix Report.....	62
About the Lift Chart	64
Scoring Run Status.....	65
Scoring Run Results.....	66
Interpreting Scoring Run Results	67
Attachments.....	68
Notes	68

Using Oracle Marketing Online

The Home Tab	69
Home Tab Bins, Reports and Charts.....	69

Using Home Tab Most Recent Bins	70
Viewing Home Tab Reporting and Key Metric Bins.....	70
Viewing Home Tab Reports.....	70
Viewing Home Tab Charts.....	71
Selecting and Removing Home Page Bins, Reports and Charts.....	71
Editing a Home Page Bin.....	72
Editing a Home Page Report	73
Editing a Home Page Chart	73
Setting Profile Preferences.....	74
The Product Tab.....	75
Searching For Products in Inventory	75
Viewing Product or Product Bundle Details	76
Creating a Product or Product Bundle in Inventory	76
Viewing Product or Product Bundle Offers	80
Specifying Products for a Product Bundle.....	80
Specifying Upsell, Cross Sell, and Other Related Items for a Product	81
Making a Product or Product Bundle Available for Inventory Transactions.....	81
Adding a Product or Product Bundle to Price Lists	82
Modifying a Product or a Product Bundle.....	82
Displaying Price List	84
Creating a Price List	84
Modifying an Existing Price List	85
The Audience Tab.....	86
Organization Summary Page.....	87
Personalizing the Organization Summary Page.....	87
Creating a New Organization.....	88
Maintaining Organization Detail	91
Searching for an Organization.....	94
Creating and Maintaining Organization Relationships.....	94
Creating an Organization to Organization Relationship.....	95
Creating an Organization to Person Relationship.....	96
Creating and Maintaining Organization Opportunities.....	96
Notes.....	97
Creating a Note.....	97
Viewing an Organization Note	98

Sales Teams.....	99
Adding a Team Member.....	99
Adding a Partner	100
Removing a Team Member	100
Organization Interactions.....	101
Person Subtab.....	101
Personalizing Person Summary	102
Updating the Person Summary Table	103
Sending Collateral from the Person Summary Table.....	103
Creating a Person.....	104
Searching for a Person	105
Tasks (Person)	106
Creating a Task	106
Attachments.....	107
Adding an Attachment to a Task	107
Viewing an Existing Attachment	108
360 Degree View	108
Lists.....	109
Viewing a List	109
Creating a Standard List.....	110
Creating a Manual List	111
Modifying Main List Attributes	111
Creating and Modifying List Selections.....	112
Creating and Modifying List Options	113
Generating a List.....	114
Viewing List Entries	115
Adding Notes to a List.....	116
Associating Lists	116
Regenerating a List.....	116
Exporting a List.....	117
Adding Manual Entries to a List	118
Viewing the List Process Log.....	118
Segments	119
Viewing and Editing a Segment.....	119
Creating a Segment	119

Notes	120
Import Lists	120
Importing List Entries.....	120
Searching for a Person or Organization	122
Partner Subtab	122
Creating a Partner Relationship for an Existing Organization.....	123
Viewing/Modifying Partner Profile Details	124
Creating/Viewing Partner Contacts.....	125
Creating Partner Contact Details	126
Viewing Partner Contact Relationship Details	126
Viewing Partner Contact Notes Details	127
Viewing Partner Contacts Summary	127
Viewing Partner/Customer Interaction Detail	127
Viewing Main Details	127
Viewing Organization Relationship Detail	127
Viewing Contacts	128
Viewing Contact Relationship Details	128
Viewing Organization Notes	128
Viewing Sales Team Details.....	129
The Campaign Tab	129
The Campaign Details Page.....	130
Viewing and Editing a Campaign.....	131
Creating a Campaign	132
Approvals for Theme and Budget.....	134
Entering Campaign Details.....	134
General	135
Message.....	135
Removing a Message from a Campaign	136
Geography	136
Removing a Geography from a Campaign.....	136
Products	137
Removing Products or Product Families from a Campaign	137
Specifying Deliverables	138
Removing Deliverables from a Campaign.....	138
Viewing Campaign Costs and Revenues	139

Entering New Costs and Revenues.....	139
Removing a Cost or Revenues	140
Prerequisites	140
Steps.....	140
Campaign Budgets.....	140
Campaign Schedules	141
Campaign Offers	141
Triggers.....	142
Viewing Triggers	142
Removing a Trigger	143
Creating a Trigger	143
Creating Metric to Metric Conditions.....	144
Creating Metric to Value Conditions.....	145
Creating Metric to Workbook Conditions	146
Metrics	147
Viewing Metrics	148
Entering New Metrics	148
Removing a Metric	149
Entering Values into Metrics.....	150
Copying a Campaign	150
Prerequisites	150
Steps.....	150
Creating and Editing Campaign Schedules.....	151
Viewing a Campaign Schedule.....	152
Prerequisites	152
Steps.....	152
Editing a Campaign Schedule General Details	152
Prerequisites	152
Steps.....	152
Creating a Campaign Schedule	153
Steps.....	154
Adding a Message to a Campaign Schedule	155
Removing a Message from a Campaign Schedule.....	156
Selecting Products or Product Families for a Campaign Schedule	156
Removing Product or Product Families from Campaign Schedules	157

Adding a Deliverable to a Campaign Schedule	158
Removing a Deliverable from a Campaign Schedule	159
Sourcing Budgets for Campaign Schedules.....	160
Removing a Budget Request from a Campaign Schedule.....	161
Transferring Funds from a Campaign Schedule to a Budget	162
Updating Campaign Schedule Budgets	163
Campaign Schedule Costs.....	164
Entering New Campaign Schedule Costs and Revenues	165
Steps	165
Removing a Campaign Schedule Cost or Revenue	166
Selecting a Target Group for a Campaign Schedule	167
Removing a List from a Target Group of a Campaign Schedule	168
Campaign Schedule Metrics	168
Viewing Campaign Schedule Metrics	169
Entering New Campaign Schedule Metrics	170
Removing a Campaign Schedule Metric.....	171
Steps	171
Creating a Telemarketing Campaign Schedule Using Oracle Advanced Outbound.....	171
Programs	173
Viewing Programs.....	173
Creating a Program	174
Selecting Program Components.....	174
Selecting a Program Message	176
Removing a Message from a Program	176
Program Costs.....	177
Viewing Program Costs and Revenues.....	177
Entering New Program Costs and Revenues.....	178
Removing a Program Cost or Revenue.....	178
Offers	179
Marketing Offers.....	179
Viewing and Editing an Offer.....	181
Creating Offers.....	182
Accrual Offers	183
Completing the Offer	183
Offer Details Page.....	184

Offers Advanced Options.....	185
Offer Budgets.....	186
Removing a Budget Request from an Offer.....	188
Transferring Funds from an Offer to a Budget	188
Updating Offer Budgets	190
The Event Tab.....	190
Viewing and Editing an Event.....	190
Viewing and Editing an Event Schedule.....	191
Creating an Event	191
Entering or Editing Information for an Event	192
Promoting an Event by Associating It with a Campaign	194
Entering an Event Agenda	195
Entering Speakers and Other Details for an Event	195
Entering Event Venues, Coordinators, and Other Resources	196
Creating an Event Schedule	197
Entering or Modifying Details for an Event Schedule	197
Setting Up Event Registration.....	200
Viewing the Status of Registration for an Event	201
Publishing Event Notes	202
Specifying the Invitation List for an Event Schedule	202
The Deliverable Tab.....	203
Viewing and Editing a Deliverable	205
Creating a Deliverable.....	205
Adding Associated Electronic Files	206
Stocking Physical Deliverables.....	208
Entering or Editing Detailed Deliverable Information	208
Creating a Kit of Deliverables.....	209
Deliverable Messages.....	210
Removing a Message From Use	210
Viewing and Editing a Message.....	211
Creating a Message	211
The Execution Tab.....	212
Web Postings	213
Creating a Universal Posting	213
Creating a Rule-based Posting.....	214

Updating a Universal Posting	215
Updating a Rule-based Posting.....	216
Removing a Universal or Rule-based Posting.....	217
Web Placements	217
Registering a New Site.....	217
Registering a New Page.....	218
Registering a New Location.....	218
Registering a New Style.....	218
Registering a New Placement.....	219
Updating an Existing Placement.....	219
The Budget Tab	220
Viewing Budgets.....	220
Creating a Budget.....	221
Entering and Editing Budget Information.....	223
Reviewing Budget Expenditures.....	224
Requesting Transfer of Funds from One Budget to Another.....	224
The Claim Tab	225
Manually Creating a Claim.....	226
Populating Claim Lines	228
Associate Claims.....	229
Reviewing Claim Sources.....	230
Creating Tasks.....	230
Splitting a Claim	231
Claim History.....	232
The Analytics Tab	233
Creating a List of Customers Most Likely to Respond to a Campaign	234
Creating a List of Customers Most Likely to Close Their Accounts.....	235
Creating a Model.....	235
Viewing a Model.....	236
Entering and Modifying Model Details	237
Building a Response Model	238
Building a Loyalty/Retention Model	241
Evaluating Model Results	244
Copying a Model.....	244
Scoring the Target Population with a Model.....	246

Creating a Scoring Run	247
Viewing a Scoring Run	248
Entering and Modifying Scoring Run Details	248
Selecting the Target Population and Scheduling a Scoring Run	249
Evaluating Scoring Run Results	251
Generating Lists based on Scoring Run Results.....	252
Copying a Scoring Run	253
The Administration Tab.....	255
Creating an Email Cover Letter for Mail Merge	256
Creating a Data Source.....	257
Viewing and Editing a Data Source	258
Viewing and Editing a Sub type Data Source for a Master Data Source.....	259
Creating Budget Adjustment Types.....	260
Setting Up Budget Thresholds.....	260
Setting Up Claim Adjustment Reasons	261
Defining Workflow Actions for Claim Settlement.....	262
Creating Claim Types.....	262
Setting Up System Parameters for Claims	263
Setting Up Trade Profiles.....	264
Setting Up History Rules	265
Searching.....	266
Searching Using Quick Find	266
Using Advanced Search.....	267
Viewing Details About Advanced Search Results.....	268
Entering Geography Search Criteria.....	269
Entering Product Search Criteria.....	270
Entering Deliverable Search Criteria	272
Entering Partner Search Criteria.....	273
Entering Message Search Criteria.....	274
Viewing Existing Workbooks	275
Creating Workbooks in Oracle Web Discoverer	276
Adding Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks.....	279
Adding Sort Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks.....	280
Adding Calculations in Discoverer Workbooks	281
Entering Workbook Search Criteria.....	282

Entering List Search Criteria.....	283
The List of Values (LOV)	284
Troubleshooting.....	285

Glossary

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Marketing Online Concepts and Procedures, Release 11*i*

Part No. A95205-02

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the document title and part number, and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us in the following ways:

- Electronic mail: Oracle Marketing Online@us.oracle.com
- Postal service:
Oracle Corporation
CRM Content Development Manager
Oracle Marketing Online Documentation
500 Oracle Parkway
Redwood Shores, CA 94065
USA

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, telephone number, and (optionally) electronic mail address.

If you have problems with the software, please contact your local Oracle Support Services.

Preface

Welcome to the Oracle Customer Relationship Management, Release 11*i*, suite of applications.

This guide assumes you have a working knowledge of the following:

- The principles and customary practices of your business area
- Oracle Marketing Online

If you have never used Oracle Marketing Online, Oracle suggests you attend one or more of the Oracle Marketing Online training classes available through Oracle University.

- The Oracle Applications graphical user interface

To learn more about the Oracle Applications graphical user interface, read the Oracle Applications User's Guide.

See Other Information Sources for more information about Oracle Applications product information.

Structure

This guide is optimized for online help. It is written in short, self-contained, task-oriented topics linked together with hyperlinks. When using this document in printed form, you can not follow the hyperlinks between topics.

This guide is organized in the following topic groups rather than by chapters:

- “Understanding Oracle Marketing Online” provides overviews of the application and its components, explanations of key concepts, features, and

functions, as well as the relationship of the application to other Oracle or third-party applications.

- “Using Oracle Marketing Online” provides process-oriented, task-based procedures for using the application to perform essential business tasks.

Intended Audience

The Understanding and Using topic groups of this guide are aimed at the following users:

- All marketers using the application
- Marketing application administrators
- Power users of the application
- Marketing application administrators
- Sales personnel using the application
- Any Trade Management personnel using the application

Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle Corporation is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For additional information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation JAWS, a Windows screen reader, may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, JAWS may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations

that Oracle Corporation does not own or control. Oracle Corporation neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

Other Information Sources

You can choose from many sources of information, including online documentation, training, and support services, to increase your knowledge and understanding of Oracle Marketing Online.

If this guide refers you to other Oracle Applications documentation, use only the Release 11i versions of those guides.

Online Documentation

All Oracle Applications documentation is available online (HTML or PDF). Online help patches are available on MetaLink.

Related Documentation

Oracle Marketing Online shares business and setup information with other Oracle Applications products. Therefore, you may want to refer to other product documentation when you set up and use Oracle Marketing Online.

You can read the documents online by choosing Library from the expandable menu on your HTML help window, by reading from the Oracle Applications Document Library CD included in your media pack, or by using a Web browser with a URL that your system administrator provides.

If you require printed guides, you can purchase them from the Oracle Store at <http://oraclestore.oracle.com>.

Documents Related to All Products

Oracle Applications User's Guide

This guide explains how to enter data, query, run reports, and navigate using the graphical user interface (GUI) available with this release of Oracle Marketing Online (and any other Oracle Applications products). This guide also includes information on setting user profiles, as well as running and reviewing reports and concurrent processes.

You can access this user's guide online by choosing "Getting Started with Oracle Applications" from any Oracle Applications help file.

Documents Related to This Product

Oracle Applications Concepts

This guide provides an introduction to the concepts, features, technology stack, architecture, and terminology for Oracle Applications Release 11*i*. It provides a useful first book to read before an installation of Oracle Applications. This guide also introduces the concepts behind Applications-wide features such as Business Intelligence (BIS), languages and character sets, and Self-Service Web Applications.

Oracle Pricing User's Guides

Implementers need this guide to set up pricing features of Oracle Marketing Online.

Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

This guide provides planning and reference information for the Oracle Applications System Administrator. It contains information on how to define security, customize menus and online help, and manage concurrent processing.

Other Implementation Documentation

Discoverer 3i Installation & Administration Guide Release 3.3 for the Web

This guide outlines the implementation steps for Oracle Web Discoverer.

BIS 11*i* Implementation Guide

This guide outlines the steps required to create the End User Layer (EUL) and import EUL Export File (EEX) for Oracle Web Discoverer.

Oracle CRM Application Foundation Implementation Guide

Many CRM products use components from CRM Application Foundation. Use this guide to correctly implement CRM Application Foundation.

Training and Support

Training

Oracle offers training courses to help you and your staff master Oracle Marketing Online and reach full productivity quickly. You have a choice of educational environments. You can attend courses offered by Oracle University at any one of our many Education Centers, you can arrange for our trainers to teach at your

facility, or you can use Oracle Learning Network (OLN), Oracle University's online education utility. In addition, Oracle training professionals can tailor standard courses or develop custom courses to meet your needs. For example, you may want to use your organization's structure, terminology, and data as examples in a customized training session delivered at your own facility.

Support

From on-site support to central support, our team of experienced professionals provides the help and information you need to keep Oracle Marketing Online working for you. This team includes your Technical Representative, Account Manager, and Oracle's large staff of consultants and support specialists with expertise in your business area, managing an Oracle[®]i server, and your hardware and software environment.

OracleMetaLink

OracleMetaLink is your self-service support connection with web, telephone menu, and e-mail alternatives. Oracle supplies these technologies for your convenience, available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. With OracleMetaLink, you can obtain information and advice from technical libraries and forums, download patches, download the latest documentation, look at bug details, and create or update TARs. To use MetaLink, register at (<http://metalink.oracle.com>).

Alerts: You should check OracleMetaLink alerts before you begin to install or upgrade any of your Oracle Applications. Navigate to the Alerts page as follows: Technical Libraries/ERP Applications/Applications Installation and Upgrade/Alerts.

Self-Service Toolkit: You may also find information by navigating to the Self-Service Toolkit page as follows: Technical Libraries/ERP Applications/Applications Installation and Upgrade.

Do Not Use Database Tools to Modify Oracle Applications Data

Oracle STRONGLY RECOMMENDS that you never use SQL*Plus, Oracle Data Browser, database triggers, or any other tool to modify Oracle Applications data unless otherwise instructed.

Oracle provides powerful tools you can use to create, store, change, retrieve, and maintain information in an Oracle database. But if you use Oracle tools such as SQL*Plus to modify Oracle Applications data, you risk destroying the integrity of your data and you lose the ability to audit changes to your data.

Because Oracle Applications tables are interrelated, any change you make using Oracle Applications can update many tables at once. But when you modify Oracle Applications data using anything other than Oracle Applications, you may change a row in one table without making corresponding changes in related tables. If your tables get out of synchronization with each other, you risk retrieving erroneous information and you risk unpredictable results throughout Oracle Applications.

When you use Oracle Applications to modify your data, Oracle Applications automatically checks that your changes are valid. Oracle Applications also keeps track of who changes information. If you enter information into database tables using database tools, you may store invalid information. You also lose the ability to track who has changed your information because SQL*Plus and other database tools do not keep a record of changes.

About Oracle

Oracle Corporation develops and markets an integrated line of software products for database management, applications development, decision support, and office automation, as well as Oracle Applications, an integrated suite of more than 160 software modules for financial management, supply chain management, manufacturing, project systems, human resources and customer relationship management.

Oracle products are available for mainframes, minicomputers, personal computers, network computers and personal digital assistants, allowing organizations to integrate different computers, different operating systems, different networks, and even different database management systems, into a single, unified computing and information resource.

Oracle is the world's leading supplier of software for information management, and the world's second largest software company. Oracle offers its database, tools, and applications products, along with related consulting, education, and support services, in over 145 countries around the world.

Understanding Oracle Marketing Online

This topic group provides overviews of the application and its components, explanations of key concepts, features, and functions, as well as the relationship of the application to other Oracle or third-party applications.

Overview

Oracle Marketing Online is a database product designed to provide planning, tracking, analysis and reporting of an organization's marketing activities. Its functionality is organized by the following tabs:

Name	Description
Home	Use this tab to view configurable bins, reports, charts, and links to recently accessed campaigns and events.
Product	Create products and product bundles in inventory. Create price lists and add new items and prices to existing ones.
Audience	Create and manage lists and segments of customers and prospects for your marketing activities. Use the Organization and Person subtabs to view details about your customers using functionality from Oracle Sales Online. See <i>Oracle Sales Online Concepts and Procedures</i> for further information. Use the Partners and Partner Contacts subtabs to view details regarding the organization's partners using functionality from Partners Online. See <i>Oracle Partners Online Concepts and Procedures</i> for further information.
Campaign	From this tab you can organize campaigns and track related tasks, assignments, activities, creative material, and other elements designed to promote or sell concepts, products, and services.

Name	Description
Event	From this tab you can set up and track trade shows, product launches, seminars, and other activities associated with a location or locations.
Deliverable	From this tab you can track and manage creative materials associated with campaigns, events and organizations as well as the organization's Messages.
Budget	From this tab you can track, manage and control funding for campaigns, events, offers and deliverables. This tab also features a budget checkbook for reviewing expenditures. Note: You can fund offers directly from a budget without campaigns.
Claim	From this tab you can track, research and settle claims and deductions to ensure proper processing of valid and invalid claims.
Administration	Configure Oracle Marketing Online

Acronyms

Following is a list of acronyms used in this guide, and a short explanation for each.

Acronym	Explanation
AO	Oracle Advanced Outbound - A product used to preprocess marketing campaigns for Oracle Telesales.
B2B	Business to Business, a commerce model.
B2B2C	Business to Business to Consumer - A commerce model usually associated with Trade Management.
B2C	Business to Consumer - A commerce model.
BIS	Business Intelligence System - A module in the E Business Suite used generally for reporting purposes.
CRM	Customer Relationship Management
CSV	A comma delimited data file type.
DBA	Database Administrator - The person within an organization primarily responsible for the deployment and maintenance of an Oracle database product.

Acronym	Explanation
DNC	Do Not Call - A flag in marketing databases and lists indicating people who do not wish to be contacted.
ERP	Enterprise Resource Planning
EUL	End User Layer - A user interface that is part of Oracle Discoverer. The EUL provides a methodology for questioning a database without having to know query language, or database terminology or structure.
JSP	Java Server Page
LOV	List of Values - A list that appears in various drop-down fields within OMO. These List of Values can be predefined or created from user entered information.
PHP	Personal Home Page - A page where Workflow notifications may be found.
TCA	Trading Community Architecture - Oracle's single customer database architecture for all types of customers.
UOM	Unit of Measure
URL	Universal Resource Locator - The full name or path of a web page or file location.
VAD	Value Added Distributor - A type of partner.

Navigating Through Oracle Marketing Online

Navigate through the application by clicking on the tabs, subtabs, bins, and side panel menu items. Here are the various user interface elements used in Oracle Marketing Online and a brief explanation of their use. Click the element name in the first column of the following table to see a more detailed explanation.

Interface Element	Brief Explanation
Tabs, Subtabs and Links	Two levels of tabs provide navigation through the application. Some subtabs may provide a horizontal list of links.
Side Panel Menus	Contain a list of items pertinent to the Tab or Subtab. Items which contain data may be marked with a checkmark.
Folders	Display the hierarchical structure of information. Folders which contain information are marked with a plus (+) sign.

Interface Element	Brief Explanation
Bins	<p>Bins are displayed on the Home tab. There are three types of bins: reporting, most recent, and key performance metrics.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Reporting bins display trend and performance information for key marketing activities, including budget utilization and campaign and event effectiveness. Each of these bins contain links enabling you to drill-down to more granular details.■ Most recent bins display links to recently accessed campaigns and events.■ The key performance metrics bins are a collection of key performance indicators for a particular business flow. Example: Response to Lead

Tabs, Subtabs and Links

There are two types of page arrangements in the Oracle Marketing Online application:

- Pages with two levels of tabs and a side panel menu
- Pages with two tab levels and links

Side Panel Menus

A Side Panel Menu organizes the information you enter and track. Each item on the Side Panel Menu represents a specific collection of information. You can add modify or remove that information by selecting the appropriate Side Panel Menu item to display the appropriate page.

A checkmark displayed to the left of a Side Panel Menu item indicates information has been entered.

Side Panel Menus, with the exception of those associated with Campaigns and Events, have a standard list of items. The campaign and event tabs have customizable Side Panel Menus which may display different items depending on the type of campaign or event.

Pages with Two Levels of Tabs and a Side Panel Menu

The Oracle Marketing Online application screen is displayed with a row of tabs across the screen directly above a solid band of color, just as file folder tabs would

appear in a filing drawer. Each tab controls access to a particular object, such as a campaign, event, deliverable, or message.

Each tab may have one or more subtabs. These subtabs appear as links on the solid band of color. Selecting a link will display the page associated with that subtab.

Subtabs may have a Side Panel Menu. Side Panel Menus contain items which display various pages relating to the subtab. Clicking a Side Panel Menu item will display the appropriate page.

Pages with Two Levels of Tabs and Links

The Oracle Marketing Online application screen is displayed with a row of tabs across the screen directly above a solid band of color, just as file folder tabs would appear in a filing drawer. Each tab controls access to a particular object, such as a campaign, event, deliverable, or message.

Each tab may have one or more subtabs. These subtabs appear as links on the solid band of color. Selecting a link will display the page associated with that subtab.

Subtabs may have an additional row of links running across the top of the screen. Clicking a link will display the page for that information.

Folders

Oracle Marketing Online uses folders to display the parent-child relationship between marketing objects.

Parent objects, such as summary metrics and costs, are indicated by a plus sign displayed just to left of the object name. Only parent objects with child objects are shown with plus signs. Clicking on the plus sign displays a list of child objects in indented fashion directly below the parent object.

Bins

Bins are displayed on the Home tab. There are three types of bins:

- Reporting
- Most Recent
- Key Performance Metrics

The following table displays a brief description of each.

Bin Type	Description
Reporting	Display trend and performance information for key marketing activities, including budget utilization and campaign and event effectiveness. Each of these bins contain links enabling you to drill-down to more granular details.
Most Recent	Display links to recently accessed campaigns and events
Key Performance Metrics	A collection of key performance indicators for a particular business flow. Example: Response to Lead

Navigational Path Conventions

Here is the convention used by this documentation to describe user navigation:

- **Tab > subtab > link**
- **Tab > subtab > side panel menu item**
- **Tab > Create.** Select the tab and click the Create button to create a new marketing object for that tab.

Logging In

To log in to Oracle Marketing Online, you will need a login ID and a password. Enter your login and password to access the system and display the Home Page.

The Home Page

The Home page is the first page displayed after logging into Oracle Marketing Online. This page displays configurable bins, reports and charts for viewing summary information about key marketing activities, along with links to recently accessed campaigns and events.

Home Page Bins, Reports and Charts

The Home page provides the option to display configurable bins, reports and charts. The reporting bins on the Home page enable users to quickly view the knowledge they need to perform their jobs. The reporting bins contain summary information about key marketing activities, including budget utilization and campaign and event effectiveness. Each bin provides links to drill down reports

with more granular details. The Home page also provides configurable reports and charts containing key marketing information, including top Campaigns by Leads and top Events by Registrations.

The following types of objects are available for display on the Home page:

- Key Metrics Bins, which include links to corresponding Drill Down Reports
- Reporting Bins, which include links to corresponding Drill Down Reports
- Most Recent Bins, which include links to recently accessed campaigns and events
- Reports
- Charts

The user can configure each reporting and key metric bin as to how the data is aggregated and the number of rows to display. The Home page reports and charts are configurable in a similar fashion.

Each reporting and key metric bin contains links to one or more drill-down reports. The drill-down reports contain detailed information related to the reporting or key metric bin and aggregate selected by the user. The drill-down reports may also contain links to navigate the user to a particular campaign, event or budget object.

References

[The Home Tab](#)

Profiles

Oracle Marketing Online has some attributes that the user may modify. The profile link in the upper right corner of the page displays a profile page where items such as passwords, number of database rows displayed, default currency and other attributes.

Access to many of the tabs is controlled by a responsibility. Each user is given a responsibility which determines what tabs are displayed and what rights a user may have.

Finding Information

Oracle Marketing Online provides you with three ways to find the information:

- [Views of Marketing Objects](#)

- [Use the Quick Find function to search](#)
- [Perform a detailed search using Advanced Search](#)

Views of Marketing Objects

When you click on a tab, Oracle Marketing Online automatically displays all the objects appropriate for the tab which are you are able to edit.

By selecting a different view, the database will be requeried. The objects appropriate to that new view will be displayed.

To help you find objects, you can sort the list by clicking on a column heading. Any sortable column heading appears as a hyperlink.

If the list of objects is too long, use quick find to locate a particular object.

Campaign Views

You can display the following campaign views from the View drop-down list:

View	Explanation
My campaigns	Campaigns you own or for which you have update privileges
All campaigns	All campaigns you can view
My country's campaigns	Lists all campaigns viewable to you in your country. You must set up your home country in the preferences page
My division's campaigns	Lists all campaigns viewable to you in the country that belong to your division. A division is one level above your country in the geographic hierarchy. For example, the Americas division may consist of USA and Canada. If you designate the USA as your home country, then this view displays all campaigns in the USA and Canada
My team's campaigns	Lists all campaigns that include you as a team member
Campaign Hierarchy	Displays the campaign hierarchy for your organization as a tree

Use the [Advanced Search](#) feature to search for messages, campaigns, deliverables, events, and lists. Advanced search cannot be used to locate notes, tasks, or attachments which are associated with messages, campaigns, deliverables, and so on.

Quick Find

Use Quick Find to locate a marketing object. Quick Find works even if you know only part of the name of the campaign, event, or other object which you are looking for.

Use the "%" sign as a wild card. For example, to search for a campaign, select Campaigns from the drop down list and enter a partial campaign name. If you enter Q1%, for instance, the application returns a list of all campaigns with names that begin with Q1.

Advanced Search

Selecting the Advanced Search link next to the Quick Find allows you to enter a wide variety of criteria for your searches. See [Using Advanced Search](#) for instructions on how to do so.

See Also

[Campaign Views](#)

Getting Help

From any tab, click the **Help** link in the upper right corner of the screen to display a help window for that tab. On that help window you will find a basic explanation for that tab as well as a number of useful links for subtopics and related topics.

Marketing Campaigns

Campaigns are constructed using a wide variety of marketing objects. The basic components of campaigns are its theme, the funding (budgets), the execution (schedules), the target audience (lists and marketing mediums), the cost (costs) and response measuring devices (metrics).

Because all campaigns are not created alike, custom setups are available to easily configure campaigns for different activities and marketing channels.

Campaigns often create a hierarchal structure. Campaigns may be divided by geography or by product or by marketing channel.

The execution of a campaign may be further broken down by schedule. A schedule determines when, where and how a campaign activity is executed. A particular

campaign may have multiple schedules for many different marketing channels and for execution of a campaign over a period of time.

Campaign and Event Approvals

Campaigns and events are approved according to business rules contained in Oracle Workflow. These business rules are designed to reflect the organization's approval process. Oracle Marketing Online comes with a predefined workflow that automatically sends campaigns and events for approval by a designated approver when a campaign or event is created. There are two types of approvals:

- [Theme approval](#)
- [Budget approval](#)

The organization's application administrators for Oracle Marketing Online will enable the approval workflows during the implementation process.

Theme Approval

When you change the status of a campaign or event from New to Planned, Oracle Marketing Online sends a request for approval either to the owner of that campaign or event, or, if you are the owner, to the person who is listed as your supervisor in Oracle Human Resources. The application automatically changes the campaign and event status to Submitted for Approval. You receive a notification in your Personal Home Page when the owner or your supervisor approves or rejects the campaign or event. If the campaign or event is approved, the status changes to Planned. If the campaign or event theme is rejected, then the status becomes Denied Theme Approval.

Budget Approval

When you change the status of a campaign, offer or an event from Planned to Active, Oracle Marketing Online work flow sends out two requests for budget approval:

- The overall budget amount you enter in the campaign, offer or event detail is sent for approval either to the owner of that campaign or event, or, if you are the owner, to any person listed as your designated approver in Oracle Human Resources.
- The specific line item budget requests entered in the Budget item from the side panel menu to the respective budget owners. If the budget item comes from a campaign rather than a budget, then the person approving the request is the owner of that campaign. The campaign status changes to Submitted for Budget

Approval. You receive a notification in your Personal Home Page if the budget owner approves or rejects the campaign. If the budget is approved, then the status of the campaign becomes Available. If the budget is denied, then the status becomes Denied Budget Approval.

Executing Marketing Activities Through Schedules

Schedules set up the actual delivery of the marketing campaign. They determine when specific marketing activity is going to take place, what the methodology of that activity is, and how the responses will be captured. They also determine how any mailing or calling lists, cover letters or other content are used and what deliverables, if any, are involved.

Schedules can be triggered. That is, some threshold must be reached before a schedule will be activated. For example, if the response rate in a particular test market reaches a given threshold, then campaign schedule for a larger test market is activated.

When you create a schedule using the procedure outlined in Campaigns, the information about the activity becomes available to others in your organization on the dates you specify.

Offers

You can use Oracle Marketing Online to set up five different types of offers. These include:

- Off Invoice
- Lump Sum
- On Invoice
- Order Value
- Promotional Goods

The following table lists the offer types and descriptions.

Offer	Description
Off Invoice	Offers that generate an accrual account used to offset purchases or for a lump sum reimbursement.

Offer	Description
Lump Sum	Offers are reimbursement for marketing activities taken by a merchandiser on the organization's behalf.
On Invoice	Discounts taken at the invoice level. These can be single, 10 percent or \$10 off an offer of \$100 or more; or they can be multi-tiered where the amount or percentage off increases with the size of the order. Off Invoice offers are used with single product or product families.
Order Value	Order Value offers are discounts based on the total value of the order. Again, these may be single or multi-tiered.
Promotional Goods	Bundles promotional goods with customer purchases. Example: a customer purchasing an ink-jet printer receives a cartridge free of charge.

For more information, see [Marketing Offers](#)

Events

This topic gives an overview of event functionality and explains the features of the three building blocks you use to set up and track events: events, event schedules and one-off events. It covers:

- [Event overview](#)
- [Event building blocks](#)

Events Overview

An event can be a seminar, a class, a product demonstration, or any other activity that is location specific. You can create an event as a stand-alone activity or as part of a campaign. Using Events, a marketer can:

- Track and distribute event information. This includes information about event's speakers, directions, deliverables, budgets and registration.
- Manage open and restricted registration using rules and lists
- Facilitate registration (in Oracle TeleSales and Oracle Marketing Online only)
- Integrate with call centers to distribute information and to facilitate registration
- Send enrollees event deliverables that includes descriptions, directions, maps, and cover letters using Oracle TeleSales.

Event Building Blocks

Use event building blocks to store general information about an event such as the description, costs, deliverables, venue, directions to the event, and optionally, the campaign used to promote the event. A company offering a sales seminar worldwide, for example, enters the information common to all the individual country sales seminars in an event. This information can then be customized for each separate country, location and time using event schedules.

You can also customize the general information you entered in events to create events, event schedules, and one-off events and to track participation and enrollment in each. For example, a country manager of the company offering a sales seminar worldwide creates an event schedule for the local seminar with its own times, speakers, and costs associated with each specific event.

Deliverables

Deliverables are marketing collateral that you can distribute to customers across multiple channels. Each Deliverable object represents hard or soft collateral which is associated with a Campaign or an Event. Examples can include:

- Creating a brochure for an event
- Advertising in a magazine for a promotional campaign
- Creating a data sheet for a product launch campaign
- Promoting brand loyalty, special offers, product messages, and events.

With the exception of email content, you do not actually create deliverables in Oracle Marketing Online, but rather manage and account for them in the application. For example, you can do deliverable budgeting, planning, specifying costs and other metrics associated with their production and availability.

Deliverables that use budgets:

The user begins the workflow process by setting the deliverable to Budget Approval. This initiates the budget approval workflow. The status is changed to Pending Budget Approval. The budget approver approves the total budget for the deliverable via a workflow notification.

If the budget is approved, the user can activate the deliverable by setting status to Final Loaded. This initiates the concept (theme) approval process. The status is changed to Pending Approval. The concept approver approves the entire

deliverable item via a workflow notification. If there is no response within a certain time frame, the request will be submitted to an alternate contact.

If approved, the status is changed to Final Loaded. The deliverable is now available for fulfillment and approved usage across campaigns and events.

If a budget is used and is not approved, the budget workflow process is initiated by the system before the deliverable is submitted for concept approval. The budget must be approved before the deliverable can be approved.

Deliverables that do not use budgets:

The user begins the workflow process by setting the deliverable to Final Loaded. This initiates the concept (theme) approval process. The status is changed to Pending Approval. The concept approver approves the entire deliverable item via a workflow notification. If there is no response within a certain time frame, the request will be submitted to an alternate contact.

If approved, the status is changed to Final Loaded. The deliverable is now available for fulfillment and approved usage across campaigns and events.

When a deliverable reaches the end date, the deliverable is set to expired. An expired deliverable cannot be used or fulfilled, but can be accessed and referenced.

A user can archive a deliverable when it is no longer needed. An archived deliverable is no longer accessible and cannot be used.

A deliverable can be canceled at any time. A canceled deliverable is no longer accessible and cannot be used. Note that campaigns or events which use archived or canceled deliverables get notification of the status change.

Deliverable Messages

Use deliverable messages to plan and manage corporate positioning statements across multiple deliverable items, and campaigns and events. Messages are associated with products or products suites, and can be used by the campaigns and events which promote those products.

Examples of messages include corporate and offering slogans, positioning statements, other key branding marketing strategies, logos, style sheets, creative guidelines, templates, and so on. You can use these across one or more deliverables.

You can access the list of messages using the Messages subtab. Drill-down to the details and attributes of each Message by clicking the Message name hyperlink in the summary table.

A message is similar to any other deliverable, except that it must be set to Active to be associated with a campaign or event.

A message Type assigns the message to the product level, product suite-level, or organization level.

The Products cue card entry enables you to associate specific product families or products with a message. If a Product Family is selected, you can exclude specific products from using the message for the whole suite.

The Attachments cue card entry enables you to attach message-specific deliverables, such as style sheets, templates, positioning statements and so on. Attachments are the content and provide the usage of the actual message.

eMerchandising

This topic gives an overview of eMerchandising functionality and explains the concepts on which this functionality was built. It covers:

- [General Concepts](#)
- [Web Postings](#)
- [Web Placements](#)

General Concepts

As a merchant, you can use eMerchandising to create and execute marketing campaigns targeted at customer segments on their storefronts. You can also create product recommendations and display them in iStore.

With this functionality, you, as a merchandiser can:

- Display personalized content selected through merchandising strategies
- Display postings on specified Web locations (placements) on the iStore and other sites (Partners Online, affiliate sites)
- Integrate with Oracle Personalization recommendation engine

There are six basic areas of execution in eMerchandising. These include:

- Postings
- Merchandising Strategy
- Targeting Rule

- Display Priority
- Placement

The following table gives a brief explanation of each of area of functionality.

Function	Description
Posting	<p>An object used to dynamically select personalized content. There are two types of postings: Universal and Rule-based.</p> <p>A universal posting applies the same merchandising strategy to all the visitors. Note that nevertheless, the strategy may return different personalized content to different visitors.</p> <p>A universal posting specifies the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Content type (product recommendation or Web advertisement)■ Merchandising strategy■ Display priority■ Maximum number of items to be displayed■ Status <p>A rule-based posting allows you to specify different merchandising strategies for different customers, through the use of targeting conditions. A rule-based posting specifies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Content type■ Number of items to be displayed■ List of targeting rules■ Status

Function	Description
Marketing Strategy	<p>A merchandising strategy is an algorithm used to select the personalized content items to be returned by the posting.</p> <p>Merchandising strategies may be of one of the following types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Specific list of content items. Example: select a campaign to display amongst a given list ■ Predefined relationships: Example: display an ad related to a product cross-selling the shopping cart content ■ Inferred recommendations: Example recommend the product the customer is most likely to buy based on his history, using Oracle Personalization recommendation engine ■ Custom strategies: You have the ability to extend the available merchandising strategies by defining his own.
Targeting Rule	<p>Rule-based postings give you the ability to define which merchandising applies to whom. The 'whom' is defined by the targeting rules. A targeting rule specifies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A combination of one or more of the 3 targeting conditions types (visitor status, shopping cart total, marketing list) ■ A merchandising strategy (which will apply only if the above combination of conditions is true) ■ A display priority to apply to the merchandising strategy.
Display Priority	<p>A business attribute specified to prioritize the personalized content (returned by the merchandising strategy) for display, based on business objectives. Example: prioritize the merchandised products based on price, and display the highest priced product.</p>
Placements	<p>An object that represents a space on a site for displaying content. A placement is typically associated with a posting that dynamically defines the content to be displayed in the space. It contains the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Site location information (site, page and page location, iStore mini-site, iStore top section) ■ Stylesheet (Full Banner) <p>eMerchandising allows you to extend the use of placements beyond iStore, thus giving the possibility to define placements on iSupport or on external HTML sites for example.</p>

Merchant Process Flows

These are setup values created during application installation, which do not change on a day-to-day basis.

Setup	Function
Setup for declaring page locations	Declare names of sites, pages and locations that will be used to make calls from JSP pages. eMerchandising uses this information to create placements and serve them at run-time.
Oracle Personalization setup	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Rating values and prompts defined for explicit profiling (Example 1-5; 5=> "I love it")Rating values for navigation defined for implicit profiling: (Example 1 => click on detail, 2 => add to cart)
Extending Rules and Strategies	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Enable merchant to define custom strategies, and rule conditions. These strategies and conditions will be evaluated at run-time, just as the out-of-box ones.

Roles

Following are the functions of various roles involved in the process flows.

Web Merchandiser

- Defines postings, representing a merchandising strategy and a display priority
- Consults campaign manager and product manager for inputs regarding categorizing content
- Suggests placement of eMerchandising APIs calls on template to template author

Campaign Manager / Product Manager

- Creates and manages products (in Item Master) and campaigns (in Marketing Online)
- Categorizes their respective content

Content Author

- Associates Web content (text, gif files, and so on) with campaigns, products, other content
- Builds style sheets of various types for content

- Consults product manager/campaign manager for specific content or styles associated with products/campaigns

Template Owner

- Publishes placements (by embedding calls) on templates in appropriate layout positions. The template author owns the layout of the page, and can define new placements (in addition to out-of-box placements) to represent other layout locations.
- Consults with merchandiser regarding layout/placement design.

Web Postings

A web posting is an object used to define the personalized content that is dynamically selected and displayed in a placement, at run-time.

Universal versus Rule-based Postings

There are two types of postings:

- Universal
- Rule-based

A universal posting applies the same merchandising strategy to all the visitors, however, the strategy may return different personalized content to different visitors.

A rule-based posting can apply different merchandising strategies to different visitors. Visitors are targeted using conditions based on their status (anonymous, registered), the amount of their shopping cart or last quote, or their belonging to a marketing list, as defined in the Audience tab.

In addition to the common attributes, a universal posting specifies:

- A merchandising strategy: generates a list of personalized content to be displayed
- A display priority: prioritizes this list based on business attributes (such as price)

A rule-based posting specifies:

- A list of targeting rules. Each rule consists of a list of conditions, a merchandising strategy, and a display priority

The following table lists the common attributes of web postings with an explanation of each.

Field	Description
Name	A user-defined name for the posting.
Description	A brief description of the posting.
Content Type	<p>The content type is selected at the posting level and specifies the type of content returned by the posting. There are two categories of content types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Products■ Web Ads
■ Product	<p>Use content type Products to make product recommendations to the visitor. eMerchandising actually manipulates the product as an object (defined in Inventory) during the phase of selection of products to recommend.</p> <p>Note: at run-time, the recommended products are automatically filtered by the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Published flag: all the recommended products must be published in iStore■ Customer's specialty store: the visitor has the ability to buy all recommended products.
■ Web Ads	<p>Web ads refer to Marketing Online campaign schedules objects, of the Web Advertisement. You can use web ads to improve product brand or company awareness or to alert a customer of new and upcoming products, deals, or other information.</p> <p>Important: The selected campaign schedules are automatically filtered by the visitor's target group. In Marketing Online, a schedule may be associated with a target group, consisting of a combination of lists, segments and workbooks. It is important for the marketer that only the customers pertaining to the schedule's target group be exposed to the campaign. Therefore, at run-time eMerchandising selects only the campaigns for which the visitor is eligible.</p>
Number of items displayed	<p>This is the number of content items that the posting should return. The default is 1.</p> <p>For example, you would like to make up to 5 product recommendations on the home page. Sometimes, a merchandising strategy may return fewer items than specified in this number. Hence it is referred to as a maximum number.</p>

Field	Description
Status	The posting's status has two values: Active or Inactive. This allows the user to control whether the posting can be assigned to a placement or not. You can assign only active postings to placements. An active posting cannot be changed to inactive as long as it is assigned to at least one placement. You must therefore de-assign it from a placement before you can change a status.

Merchandising Strategies

A merchandising strategy is an algorithm used to select the personalized content items to be returned by the posting. There are four Merchandising strategy types:

- Specific list of content items
- Predefined relationships
- Inferred recommendations
- Custom strategies

Specific list of content items

Based on the content type selected at the posting level, the eMerchandising administrator has access to a list of relevant content items and picks from those to create the list.

Predefined relationships

This type of merchandising strategy leverages the association between content items and inventory products, as well as the item relationships between the inventory products, as defined in iStore or Inventory.

You may choose to have the merchandising strategy return:

- a. Content which is directly associated to a product context. Example: "Select the web ads that are directly associated with the products on page."
- b. Content which is associated to products which are linked to a product context by an item relationship. Example: "Select the Web Ads associated to the products up-selling the products in the cart."

A product context can be one of the following:

- Products being viewed on the page
- Products in the active shopping cart

The association between a content item and an inventory product may be of a different nature based on the content type, as outlined in the following table.

Content Type	Association
Products	Self Example: Select the products up-selling the products in cart
Web Ads	Optionally defined in Oracle Marketing Online at the schedule level.

The item relationships are those created in the Inventory module or on the iStore Merchant page. These relationships include, but are not limited to:

- Up-sell
- Cross-sell
- Substitute
- Related

Inferred Recommendations

This type of merchandising strategy leverages the integration of the Oracle Personalization recommendation engine.

Oracle Personalization provides personalization for e-business sales channels, such as Web Stores, application hosting environments, and call centers. It provides an integrated, real-time recommendation engine that is completely embedded within the Oracle database.

When selecting Oracle Personalization as the merchandising strategy, you have the following display content options:

- Based on the visitor history: Takes into account the browsing and purchase history of the visitor
- Based on cross-sell to a product context: Finds the best products to cross-sell for the given product context. eMerchandising selects content associated to these products (the association being the same as those defined in predefined relationships.)

In addition, you can specify the following advanced parameters to refine the recommendations. If you do not define these advanced parameters for the posting, the system enters the default values on the Administration page.

Parameter	Option
Interest Dimension	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Buy 	Ranks items according to the likelihood that the customer will buy them. This interest dimension is useful in situations where selling items is the main goal
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Browse 	Ranks items according to the likelihood that the customer would be interested in the items. This interest dimension is useful in situations where the intent is measured indirectly using navigational data (implicit preferences or interest).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Like 	Ranks items according to the expected rating that the customer would assign to them. This interest dimension is useful in applications that collect rating data on items (that is, explicit preference or interest).
Respective importance of session and historical data.	Indicates whether to take data from current session or from history when making recommendations. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Only historical ■ Balanced ■ Only current session
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Only historical 	Use historical data only for creating recommendations
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Balanced 	Use a balanced mixture of historical data and current session data for creating recommendations
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Only current session 	Use current session data only for creating recommendation
Validity of previously purchased data	Specifies whether or not the recommendation list can include products that are in the visitor's profile.

Parameter	Option
Serendipity	<p>Specifies how unusual the recommendations returned will be. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Low: recommend less obvious items for a given customer profile■ Medium: recommend a balanced mixture of obvious and less obvious items for a given customer profile■ High: recommend obvious items for a given customer profile. Best Sellers appear more frequently among the recommendations in this case

Custom strategies

Using eMerchandising, merchants have the ability to extend the merchandising strategies beyond those described above. Merchants can create Java classes that will implement their custom strategies. Then, they will register these classes in the eMerchandising Administration tab, which makes custom merchandising strategies available to use in a posting.

Targeting Rules

Rule-based postings consist of a list of ordered targeting rules. Each targeting rule targets a particular visitor profile with a different merchandising strategy. A targeting rule specifies the following:

- Name
- Description
- Rule priority
- List of conditions
- Merchandising strategy
- Display priority

Rule Priority The rule priority is used by the iMarketing engine at run-time to prioritize the targeting rules of a posting, and is used according to the following algorithm:

- For a posting returning a maximum number of N content items, the targeting rule with the highest priority (the one with the smallest rule priority number) is executed first.

- The system validates that the rule priority is unique amongst the rules belonging to the same posting.

Conditions A rule may contain a combination of the following condition types. The rule is executed only if *all* the conditions are true; in other words, all the conditions of a rule are link with a logical and operator.

Condition	Function
Visitor Status	<p>Checks whether the visitor is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Anonymous ■ Registered without Purchase History ■ Registered with Purchase History <p>This allows you to use different merchandising strategies to anonymous or registered user or to offer a special offer to a visitor who registered to the store but hasn't bought anything yet.</p>
Shopping Cart Total	<p>This condition allows you to compare the total amount of the active shopping cart to a value specified in the default currency (as defined in the Administration screen). This allows you to define rules like "If visitor's shopping cart amount is greater than \$1,000 display the high-end product line advertisements".</p>
Segments and Lists	<p>This condition allows you to select a set of segments and lists as defined in the Audience tab of Marketing Online. Lists are a combination of segments, workbooks and other lists. At run-time, the eMerchandising engine checks whether the visitor is part of at least one of the selected segments or lists. This allows you to define rules like "if the visitor is part of the 18-25 year-old or 26-35 year-old segment, then recommend the following list of products."</p>
Custom conditions	<p>eMerchandising allows you to implement their own custom conditions. Merchants can create Java classes that will implement their custom conditions. Then, they will have to register these classes in the eMerchandising Administration tab, which will make their custom conditions available to use in the conditions list of a targeting rule.</p>

Display Priorities

Aside from showing the highest affinity content to a customer, a merchant wants to *push* content based on business drivers. This trade-off of affinity-based pull versus

business driver-based push is achieved by imposing a prioritization criteria, or display priority, on the content items returned by the merchandising strategy.

The display priority are:

Display Priority	Effect
None	In this case the items are returned in the order they were retrieved. This is the best performing display priority.
Random	This display priority enables content rotation when the user comes back to the same page. This also ensures equitable exposure of all content and prevents starving some content items of being exposure.
An order (Highest / Lowest) and attribute relevant to the posting's content type	For example, a merchant displaying product recommendations on a store's page may want to display the highest margin products in priority.

List Price is the seeded display priority that ships with eMerchandising. Following is a scenario outlining when this priority is appropriate.

Scenario: For a high-end customer a merchandiser may want to show high-priced products, thereby preserving the brand image of the store. For a low-end customer a merchandiser may want to recommend affordable products to stimulate purchase and return visits.

Display Priorities for Web Ads

A Web Ad is the same thing as a Marketing Online schedule. Therefore, the display priorities available for Web Ads will be the following:

Display Priority	Explanation
Schedule priority	In the schedule definition screen, a priority can be assigned to the schedule. Example: recommend the highest priority Web Ads first
Schedule start or end date	Example: recommend the latest Web Ads first

Use of Product Display Priorities for other content types

In the case the posting's merchandising strategy is of type Predefined Relationships or Inferred recommendations, the strategy first selects products and then checks for the associated content type. In this case, you may want to prioritize the display not on content type attributes, but on the products priorities. Therefore, the display priorities for products should also appear in the list of available display priorities for this content type. For example, if you create a posting returning Web Ads related to products that cross-sell the content of the shopping cart, he may want to prioritize the display on the list price of the products instead of prioritizing along a Web display priority.

Web Placements

A Web placement is a logical representation for a physical space on an application page, where some content (returned by a posting) is displayed. It is identified by a site, a page, a location, and eventually some page parameters. You can activate a placement once you assign to it a posting and display style.

Site

A site is an Oracle e-business suite application or any other HTML site which is using eMerchandising to display personalized content.

eMerchandising ships with seeded sites out-of-the-box (iStore and Partners Online) and a screen will be available to register new sites.

Page

A page in eMerchandising may represent a unique page in an application or a template, based on how you want to classify their placements. In the case of iStore, pages are logical templates as defined in the 'Templates' tab of the iStore Merchant UI.

Merchants register the pages in Administration. For iStore pages, they select the iStore templates they want to use. For non iStore pages, they enter a page name and a description.

Out-of-box iStore Pages

iStore pages are treated as default, and come seeded with the application The following iStore pages are provided:

- Section pages

- Product Detail pages
- Shopping Cart page

Location

The location designates the place in the page where the placement is situated. There are fifteen seeded values for the location out-of-the-box:

- Top Center
- Right 1 to Right 7
- Left 1 to Left 7

You can define additional locations in the Administration section.

The application ships with out-of-box placements for the 15 above locations in the seeded store pages (listed in out-of-box iStore pages.) Also, the administration screens contain the list of predefined placements.

Page Parameters

For a same page, you may want to display different content based on certain parameters of the page. This is only possible for iStore and for two specific parameters: specialty stores and top section.

Every iStore logical template can be associated to a different physical JSP based on the specialty store, so for every iStore page registered in eMerchandising, you can define different placements based on the specialty store. For example, for the Shopping Cart page, it will be possible to define different placements on the upper right corner for the different specialty stores, and thus to assign different postings.

Some iStore logical templates display product related information, either at the section level or at the item level. In these cases, it is possible to identify the top section of the store structure the customer is currently shopping in (this top section is one of the tabs that appear on top of the iStore customer UI). So for each iStore template registered in eMerchandising, you can define different placements based on the top section, and thus to assign a different posting. For example, you may want to use a different posting in the upper center location of the section detail page for the Books section and for the CDs section.

To avoid defining all the placements for all the specialty stores or all the combinations of specialty store/top section, you can select the Any value. Thus, unless a specialty store or a top section are explicitly selected, the placement defined for Any specialty store and/or top section will be used.

For example, assume there exists the following combination for the iStore Item Details top right placement:

Speciality Store	Top Section	Posting
Any	Any	Posting 1
General Store	Any	Posting 2
Any	Books	Posting 3
Adults	Music	Posting 4
Holiday Store	Music	Posting 5

- If a customer is in the Holiday specialty store and the Music top section, that customer is displayed Posting 5.
- If a customer is in the general store and the Music top section, that customer is displayed Posting 4.
- If a customer is in the Holiday specialty store and the Books top section, that customer is displayed Posting 3.
- If a customer is in the general store and the DVDs top section, that customer is displayed Posting 2.
- If a customer is in the Holiday specialty store and the DVDs top section, that customer is displayed Posting 1.

Special case: If the customer is in the Adults specialty store and the Books top section, Posting 3 is displayed: the top section has a higher priority than the specialty store.

Fore example: You have a particular placement you want to assign content to. Once the placement is identified (by selecting a site, a page, a location and a specialty store/top section when applicable), a posting can be assigned to it. At run-time, the calling application will ask for the personalized content associated with the defined placement, and eMerchandising uses the associated posting to return the content items.

Style

Based on the content type of the posting assigned to a placement, you may select different styles for the placements. These styles represent the stylesheets that are

applied to the XML content returned by the eMerchandising engine at run-time. eMerchandising will provide an interface in the Administration section to manage the styles per content type.

Advantages of Pages and Placements

- You retain control of content displayed in various parts of the application(s). This allows you to control which posting gets displayed on which page.
- Changing content/posting on a placement does not require touching JSP pages - placement API call decoupled from content assigned to it.

You simply reassign a posting to a placement through the Administration tab without using JSP pages.

The template owner can paste a placement API call by simply specifying the site, page and page location of the placement, without being concerned about what posting / content gets placed in the location.

- You can customize layouts and extend placements on a page easily
In addition to out-of-box placements, you can specify other placements on any eMerchandising page.
You have the flexibility of placing the placement call anywhere in the layout.
- Supports extensibility of placements to non iStore applications and html-based pages
In addition to out-of-box placements, can specify other placements on any given JSP applications, such as iSupport, and on other HTML-based pages.

Budgets

Budgets management functionality is an integral component of Oracle Marketing Online. It provides the necessary tools for establishing budgets and tracking budget expenditures. With it, you can control the complete fund definition, allocation, and management cycle.

Budgets are the source of funding for marketing campaigns, events, offers, and deliverables. When requesting such funds, you must identify the budget supporting the proposed activity.

Included in this topic are the following sections:

- [Budget hierarchies](#)

- Budgets management
- Threshold alerts
- Budget allocations
- Budget checkbooks
- Cell drill-downs
- Adjustment support

The following table explains the various terms for a budget through its various stages in Oracle Marketing Online.

Column	Definition
Total	The total value of the budget.
Holdback	A portion of the budget, either a percentage or a specified amount. The Holdback amount is held back from use, and may be adjusted as necessary.
Available	The difference between Total and Holdback amounts.
Planned	The total amount of budget requests from objects of 'pending budget approval' status.
Committed	The total amount of budget requests from objects of 'active' status.
Utilized	The sum of actual costs entered, plus amounts from Accrual and Lumpsum offers that have been earned but not paid, and amounts from all other types of offers.
Paid	The sum of actual costs entered, plus amounts from Accrual and Lumpsum offers that have been paid, plus amounts from all other types of offers.
Balance	The difference between Available and Committed amounts.

Budget Hierarchies

In Oracle Marketing Online, the budget architecture is arranged hierarchically. You can create any number of child budgets from a single parent budget and funding for campaigns or events can come from either parent or child budget.

When you request funds from a particular budget, the owner of the budget must approve the request. If the requestor is also the owner of the budget, then there are

no approval requirements unless they are established during implementation using approval rules. For example, an owner may be authorized to spend X amount before approvals are necessary.

When the owner approves a budget request, the system deducts the approved amount from the budget funds, rendering the amount accessible only for the named campaign. If any funds remain unused at the end of the campaign, the monies remain inaccessible until the campaign or event status is set to Cancelled.

Actual costs incurred by campaigns, events and other marketing activities are not tied directly to budgets and are therefore, not deducted. To track budget usage, costs for marketing activities can then be posted to the corresponding budgets funding these activities.

Budgets Management

Supported in budgets management are company defined financial controls, which help ensure compliance with both approval workflow and authorization levels for budget management. Using the audit control feature, fund and budget movement, (including payments, transfers, and allocations) are readily available for review.

Provided below is a list of the key benefits provided to you with Budgets Management.

- Full audit control of and security for creating, changing and using each fund or budget
- The ability to change an accrual rate or method on an established fully accrued (live) fund
- Full allocation capabilities
- Supporting the transfer of funds between budgets
- Live funds accrued down to the customer level
- The ability to create and control specific budget types using a variety of parameters such as spending, brands, products, territories or customers. You can associate each budget to specified eligibility across products, customers, territories and time periods.
- An automated posting of all customer accruals to the corresponding general ledger account, based on your user setup and mappings
- Simultaneous posting of all budget activities that are for offers received on the face of the invoice. With this, customers receive discounts during the invoicing process

- A checkbook that supports you in:
 - calculating actual liabilities and potential liabilities at any given point in time
 - tracking and managing the spending and re-allocation of budgets and promotional funds
 - keeping users apprised of exactly how much of their budget is available for additional deals and campaigns
 - creating an allocation hierarchy based on sales territories
 - establishing system generated (automated) funds allocation

Fixed and Accrual Budgets

Simply stated, a fixed budget is a budget with a predetermined dollar amount. This is the budget type described earlier in this section. Accrual budgets are fully accrued budgets (often called a live fund) based on order shipment quantities.

A live fund populates a budget starting at a zero value, based on specified marketing and sales parameters. You can have multiple fully accrued funds for the same product/customer combinations.

There are two types of accruals. With one, you populate a budget, and with the other, you deplete a fixed budget.

An accrual can populate both a fully accrued budget as well as an invoice related promotional activity. When used for a live fund the accrual on an invoice populates a budget starting at a zero value, based on invoice amounts or a defined SKU (stock keeping unit) for a specified time frame. Monies accrued in this type of budget then pays for negotiated discounts, marketing costs, rebates, and so forth.

An invoice/offer related accrual accrues funds to pay delayed discounts or rebates to be paid at a later date. These accruals can be funded from a fixed budget type. The two accrual types are entirely separate activities having no relationship to each other and can occur simultaneously on the same transaction.

More on Fixed Budgets

You can allocate this budget through company hierarchies, with a dollar value assigned to it prior to activation. You can relieve a fixed budget in a number of ways, including but not limited to the following:

- Accruals (also known as Off Invoice in Europe and other regions)

- Off invoice (also known as On Invoice in Europe and other regions)
- Lump sum payments

More on Accrual Budgets

As previously stated, the value of accrual budgets starts at zero and increases based on sales, using either specific dollar amounts (such as \$1.00 per case) or a percentage of sales, calculated against specific discount levels or full invoice price. The user defines where, on what hierarchy and at what percentage or dollar level these accruals accumulate. When fully accrued, the budgets are then paid to the customer based on a predefined set of rules; such as advertising or display activities. The payment occurs only if the selection is Customer.

You are not limited to the number of fully accrued funds you have accumulating for any given customer. For example, a company can set up an accrual fund for all its customers. It can then establish a second fully accrued fund for a specific customer grouping, such as all customers in a specific territory, or selling items from a specific product area, like paper and janitorial supplies. It also supports buying group related accruals.

Each buying group could have different percentage accruals based on overall purchases as well as different amounts based on specific products.

Threshold Alerts

This feature supports users in monitoring their budget activities. It provides warnings as budget depletion occur, which can help the sales department refrain from over spending their discretionary trade promotion funds. Using Threshold Alerts, you can establish a set of electronic notifications, delivered to your budget owners when spending is in danger of exceeding budget norms.

From the threshold setup screen, you establish threshold values for all alert notifications. You can establish Threshold Alerts at any level in the budget hierarchy. If you do not establish specific thresholds for child budgets, by default, they use those created at the parent level.

Budget Allocations

With this feature, you have the flexibility to distribute funds down a predefined hierarchy. To ensure that the assigned owner of the budgets is the same as the resource assigned to the territory you must establish the territory resource as the primary resource. Using this automated allocation feature, you can perform a number of tasks, including:

- Establishing a top-level value for your budget or allocation fund and distribute roll-down values to the lowest hierarchy levels, based on a percentage split
- Predefining a hold back amount, thus ensuring the availability of funds for possible future needs
- Updating funds manually, thereby maintaining control over setting spending budgets and allocations
- Transferring funds from one allocation fund or budget to another
- Releasing funds incrementally, through workflow approvals

Budget Checkbooks

The Budgets Checkbook is a tool that tracks the running balance of each budget. With this module, you will have an accurate and immediate view of existing and potential liabilities.

When you click the Budget tab, the system displays information on all the budgets you own, within the My Budgets default view.

Sort Options for Views

You have available to you a significant number of sort options, which generate various views. Checkbook views include:

- Sales Territory
- Customer
- Campaigns
- Offers

These views support drill-down capabilities, all containing information on the following budgeting activities:

- Planned
- Earned
- Paid
- Committed

You can add any of the following sorting sequencing options to the Planned, Earned, Paid, and Committed views.

Column	Definition
Type	The type of budget established. Values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Fixed■ Fully Accrued
Start Date	The date of budget activation.
End Date	The date in which the budget becomes inactive and thereby unavailable for further activities.
Owner	Budget controller.
Budget Amount	Amount of budget after allocations.
Committed	All campaigns with an Approved status. Retailer and manager grant campaign/budget approval.
Utilized	Amount of total budget earned or used.
Paid	Total paid on the promotion, amounts deducted on the face of the invoice, rendered checks and submitted credit memos.
Planned	Any amount for which new campaigns or offers are in Waiting for Approval stage.
Currency	Currency base of budget. Example: United States Dollar, Yen, Deutch Franc.
Status	Current budget states. Values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Draft■ Planned■ Active■ Closed
Number	User or system defined number associated with budget name (title).
Name	The name of all budgets associated with the corresponding View drop-down list.
Balance	The amount of funds available for further activity. Balance = Budget - Committed)

Cell Drill-Downs

With this feature, you can peruse the detail of all promotional transactions by clicking on any cell with drill-down capabilities. The drill-down cell column headings include:

- Customer
- Budget
- Planned
- Committed
- Earned
- Paid

Following is a table, outlining the available data for each drill down cell, based on the Sales Territory hierarchy.

Note: There may be more than one level of drill-down per cell. Where this applies, indented bullets represent second and third level drill-downs.

Drill-down Cell	Display
Customer	A complete listing of a company's customer, tied to a specific budget. Note: This view is available only if the allocation procedure was down to customer level.
Budget Name	Expandable/Collapsible tree of the budget hierarchy. After selecting a budget from the tree, you can view all allocations and hold backs on that budget.

Drill-down Cell	Display
Planned	<p>All campaigns in a Waiting for Approval status. Columns displayed include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Activity Type ■ Activity Code ■ Activity Name ■ Start Date ■ End Date ■ Status ■ Currency ■ Amount
Committed	<p>All campaigns with an Approved status from the retailer and internal management</p> <p>Included in this view are: Campaign ID, Start and End Date columns, and the Earned Dollars column.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Campaign ID Checkbook view displaying all budgets and standard checkbook columns for all campaign activities Note: Amounts may vary if the campaign has multiple budget sources. ■ Amount Offer details
Earnings	All lump sum payment, off-invoice or accrual activity
Paid	All dispersed payment detail

In the case of Campaigns and Offers, you can only drill down to the level to which there is activity. For example, starting at the parent level of a hierarchy and drilling down displays all customer activity executed at that parent level, including a show of all allocated funds, for a given promotion. Similarly, to drill down to the individual customer level requires some sort of activity from that customer, as reflected in the checkbook.

Adjustment Support

There are two methods of adjustment:

- [Manual Adjustments](#)
- [Automatic Adjustments](#)

Using the adjustment support feature, you can (with administrative level security) make manual adjustments to a checkbook. This includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Adjusting earnings previously committed to customers that have failed to meet agreed upon activity.
- Releasing previously committed, but unused funds, transferring them from the Committed column to the Budgets column. Examples include unused funds from:
 - Campaigns past their active date
 - Cancelled campaigns
 - Cancelled budgets

You can view all adjustments in drill-down details.

Manual Adjustments

With the manual adjustment feature, you can make positive adjustments to increase earned column and decrease the budget column of checkbook. You can also make negative adjustments to decrease earned columns, with the option of also decreasing the committed column and increasing the budget column.

Additionally, within manual adjustments you can adjust earnings after the fact. For example, if a customer fails to meet the requirements of an offer you can adjust the checkbook by returning the funds to the originating budget.

From the checkbook page, you can click the Adjustment button, which links you to the adjustment page. From there you can make any authorized manual adjustments.

Automatic Adjustments

When you cancel an offer without using all of its associated budget or funds, the remaining funds automatically revert to the Available Budget column, while equally reducing the funds in the Committed column.

Similarly, after a user-defined time period, any under utilization is also deleted from the Committed column and placed in the Budget column, as available dollars.

You control what automated processes occur when you set up your user profiles. Options include:

- Returning funds to originating budgets or budgets on a pro-rated basis
- Sending funds to a designated slush fund budget

- Leave balances unchanged for manual adjustments

Rules for Adjustment

Following is a list of rules for adjusting a budget.

- You cannot cancel a budget to which you have an approved campaign tied. You must first cancel all associated campaigns, and then cancel the budget.
- If you cancel a budget with existing campaign activities in the approval process, the system sends an alert to the campaign owner stating that the campaign must either be cancelled, or funded by an alternate budget.
- If an adjustment reference includes a product, the system posts the full adjustment against the specified product.
- If the adjustment references a campaign and offer, the system applies the adjustment amount equally among all products in the offer.

Budgets Side Panel Menu Items

For your reference, following is a table listing the Budgets subtab side panel menu items, and a description of each.

Side Panel Menu Item	Description
Planning	
■ General	<p>Displays the Budget Details page. From here you can create or edit budget information.</p> <p>For a list of fields on this page, see the Creating a Budget section, found later in this guide.</p>
■ Market Eligibility	<p>Displays the Budget Details - Market page. From here you set up the market segments eligible for budget funds. The system validates the eligibility of each market segment during the claim settlement process.</p> <p>Example of market: United States/Europe, western region, northern region.</p>
■ Products	<p>Displays the Budget Details - Products page. From here you set up the products eligible for budget funds. The system validates the eligibility of each product during the claim settlement process.</p> <p>Example of products: beverages/snack foods.</p>

Side Panel Menu Item	Description
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Allocation 	Displays the Budget Allocation page. From here you can allocate portions of the budget to selected hierarchal levels.
Checkbook	Displays the Checkbook page. From here you have the ability to review the current standing of a budget. Displayed information includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Budget position Funds availability Funds utilization
Collaboration	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Team 	Displays the Budget Details - Team page. From here you can assign budget access to various members of your team.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Notes 	<p>A free form text field used to record extraneous information about an object, such as a budget, campaign, event, and so on.</p> <p>As the information stored here may include audit trail data, you cannot delete stored notes text.</p>

Claims

With the Oracle Marketing Online Claim features you can fully manage all processes required to reconcile all deductions or claims. These processes include the research, validation, and payment (settlement) of all claims, regardless of whether the customer requests payment in the form of a check, or by deduction.

You have comprehensive access to customer transactional information to assist in the settlement and reconciliation process. This includes Orders, Payments, Deductions, Promotions, Fund Balances and Availability, and Performance information.

Specifically, this module supports you with the following tasks:

- The tracking and management of all customer financial transactions, at the product and promotion detail level. This includes accounting reconciliation of all customer payables and receivables as well as customer profiling and profitability analysis.
- Identifying authorized funds and initiating requests for payment
- Clearing valid deductions and identifying invalid deductions
- Splitting deductions and linking funds with offers

- Identifying and disallowing invalid or partial items for collection

The claims resolution process consists of the following procedures:

1. [Receive Payment Requests](#)
2. [Proof of Performance or validation of charges](#)
3. [Process Payments](#)
4. [Document Payments](#)

Receive Payment Requests

The Claims module provides a workstation to view, manage, and track a number of types of payment requests, including those received by way of invoicing, the Internet, phone, electronic mail invoice deductions and fax. This functionality includes importing unidentified and promotion-related deductions from Accounts Receivable.

Proof of Performance

With the payment requests, the customer provides proof of performance documentation. Using the Claims functionality, you can keep track of Proof of Performance Documents arriving from the customer and attach them to their coinciding payment transaction.

Process Payments

The Claims module initiates payments through:

- check
- on-account credit
- invoice credit
- write-off
- chargeback
- contra-charge
- debit memo

Prior to making any payment, the system must verify the availability of funds. If there are insufficient funds, Claims initiates a workflow to request additional monies. Based on predefined thresholds, the routing and approval process begins.

Document Payments

Through the Trade Planning module, you link document payments to specific payment requests and Deal Component IDs. You maintain a full trail for future reconciliation and analysis activities. When payments are made, this module also updates fund levels in your checkbook when you have a claim disbursement.

Claim Lines Page

The Claims Lines Page is where all settlement processing begins. As claims against a budget arrive, you list them here, creating an historical record. You can list them individually, or combine them together as one larger claim.

Associate (Claim) Page

Prior to the completion of the settlement of a claim, you must associate it with checkbook funds. Offer activities source these checkbook funds.

Split Claim

When you need to split a claim into smaller, related transactions, you can use the split claim function. With it, you can research and resolve smaller claims independently. The split function becomes critical in instances where a claim is only partially valid and part must be rejected, disallowed or held over for further investigation.

Split claims share the same master claim number, each with the addition of a suffix identifier.

Perform Split

When splitting a claim, you create one or many additional transactions and enter the desired amount for each of the new transactions. During the split, the system displays a running total of the amount assigned to the new transactions, also displaying a balance.

If you do not allocate the total amount to the new transactions, the system assumes a partial split, with the unassigned balance remaining on the original deduction. An error condition occurs whenever the running open balance on the original transaction is less than zero. When saved, the system commits this information to the database.

Claims Settlement

Valid claims may be paid by a check issued by Accounts Payable, a credit memo generated in Accounts Receivable, or a write-off. The system can route all claims through workflows for necessary approvals.

The system validates all requests. If a check or credit memo requests proves invalid, the system rejects it and through the Workflow feature, routes it to the responsible parties for communication to the customer claimant.

The Claims module charges disallowed claims back to Accounts Receivable as collection items. Alternately, the appropriate salesperson or broker can personally meet with a customer for collection.

Settlement Codes

Defined during installation are a combination of reason and type codes, used for settlement purposes. (Examples include: Promotional discount, broker error, damages, and reclamation center.) These combinations aid in analysis of claim trends and support the manufacturer in making informed decisions on possible corrective measures, as required.

Clear Duplicate Claims

The system automatically performs searches for duplicate claims and deductions, based on reference numbers or names. Once located, you clear the claim as a duplicate and both the deduction and claim reference each other for future audits.

Claims Side Panel Menu Items

For your reference, following is a list of the Claims subtab side panel menu items, and a description of each.

Side Panel Menu Item	Description
General	Displays the Claim Detail page. From here you can create or edit a claim.

Side Panel Menu Item	Description
Lines	<p>Displays the Claim Lines page. From here you list the specifics of each claim, line by line.</p> <p>Once you populate a lines and submit it for update, the system validates the claim for product and market eligibility, duplication, performance, and so on. When the claim meets all validation requirements (generated by clicking the Save button), it is then submitted (through workflow) for final resolution. This could include a check payment, credit memo issuance, write-off, higher level final approval, and so on.</p> <p>The data input fields include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Type <li>■ Name <li>■ UOM <li>■ Quantity <li>■ Price <li>■ Amount <li>■ Tax Code <p>From this page you can also associate claims.</p>
Tasks	<p>Displays the Claim Tasks page. From here you create procedures for claim settlement. Once completed, anyone assigned to a claim can view the tasks and resolve the claim accordingly.</p>
Split	<p>Displays the</p> <p>Split claims share the same master claim number, each with the addition of a suffix identifier.</p>
Attachments	<p>A file or URL attached to a marketing object.</p>
Notes	<p>A free form text field used to record extraneous information about an Oracle Marketing Online object, such as a budget, campaign, event, and so on.</p> <p>As the information stored here may include audit trail data, you cannot delete stored notes text.</p>
Settlement	

Side Panel Menu Item	Description
History	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Events■ Date■ Currency■ Amount■ Customer■ Reason■ Owner■ Status■ Due Date

Administration

Using the Administration subtabs and side panel menu items, you can define many parameters for Oracle Marketing Online.

Audience

The Audience Tab contains Oracle Marketing Online's information on the outside world. All aspects of contact beyond an organization are detailed and organized under the Audience Tab. These include relationships with external organizations, external persons, partner organizations and partner contacts.

Located within the Audience tab are the following subtabs and objects. Listed in the table is a summary of their functionality.

Subtab and Object Name	Description
Subtab	

Subtab and Object Name	Description
■ Organization	This subtab provides for a detailed review and entry of information on all types of organizations with which your organization has a relationship. Information on the organization itself, its Relationship to your organization, any Opportunities for sales that may exist, Notes, Tasks and Attachments associated with the organization, the Sales Team associated with the organization, a historical record of Interactions with the organization, and a 360 degree view of the organization from an accounting perspective are all visible from the Organization subtab.
■ Person	This subtab provides for a detailed review and entry of information about persons with which your organization has a relationship. Information on the person himself, his Relationship to your organization, any Opportunity for partner sales that may exist, Notes, Tasks and Attachments associated with the person, the Sales Team associated with the person, a historical record of Interactions with the person, and a 360 degree view of the person from an accounting perspective are all visible from the Person subtab.
■ List	This subtab provides pages to create, manage, edit and generate lists. Lists are groups of customers and prospects from either the organization's customer database or from rented or purchased lists. The entries selected by List generation are viewable from the List subtab.
■ Segment	The Segment subtab provides pages to create, manage, and edit segments. A Segment is a saved set of criteria that can be used to generate a List or define a population of customers or prospects. The major difference between a List and a Segment is that a Segment will be dynamic while a list is static. The entries generated by a Segment may differ over time as customers and prospects who meet the criteria specified by the segment are added and withdrawn from the organization's customer database.

Subtab and Object Name	Description
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Import 	<p>The Import subtab provides functionality in the form of a wizard to lead a user through the process of importing a rented or purchased list of prospects so that it can be used to generate a List within Oracle Marketing Online. The Wizard guides the user through the process of selecting the data file, mapping its fields to fields in the List Import Table, and populating the List Import Table with the records contained in the data file. Additionally, the user may chose to deduplicate the records with or without the assistance of Word Standardization. Once the records have been imported they may be used to generate Lists for use with campaigns, events and offers.</p> <p>Note:</p> <p>While importing a list, some special characters such as '-' or '&' may be a part of the header line. This may result in an error. Remove these characters from the header before you import the list into Oracle Marketing Online. For more information, see <i>SQL*Plus User's Guide</i>.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Discoverer 	<p>From this subtab you can launch Oracle Discoverer 4i. Oracle Discoverer is software that allows a user with little or no database knowledge to easily create queries and generate groups of records called Worksheets. Related Worksheets can be grouped together into a Workbook. Discoverer is used in Oracle Marketing Online to query the customer database for records meeting user designated criteria. The selected records may be used to generate a List. The query specifications may be used to create a Segment.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Search 	<p>The Search subtab provides the ability to search available lists for a particular entry.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Partner 	<p>The Partner subtab provides for review, creation and modification of information associated with the organization's partners. Partners may be general, exchange, or sales partners.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Partner Contacts 	<p>The Partner Contacts subtab provides for review, creation, and modification of information regarding contacts at partner organizations as well as internal partner contacts.</p>
<p>Object</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Relationship <p>A relationship with an external organization or person, or internal person, may be defined in any number of terms.</p>

Subtab and Object Name	Description
■ Note	A free form text field with associated author, type and date information that can be associated with many different objects in Oracle Marketing Online. Notes provide a place to record additional information about an object. Because of their historical nature, notes may not be deleted.
■ Sales Team	Information regarding the sales group, salesperson, territory, job title, role, and so on, is part of the Sales Team object.
■ Task	Tasks may be attached to various objects in Oracle Marketing Online. Generally they have a due date, a priority and a status. They may also be assigned to a particular person.
■ Interaction	Interactions between an organization and its customers is recorded in historical form, along with the marketing campaign that generated the interaction.
■ Opportunity	Opportunities are potential business transactions. The Opportunity object lists details about the sales transactions, customers, contacts, and type of products and solutions needed to move from opportunity to sale.
■ Attachment	Attachments are files or URLs which are associated with various objects in Oracle Marketing Online.
■ Worksheet	Worksheets are sets of records laid out in spreadsheet format. Worksheets are produced by Oracle Discoverer and are the result of executing a query in Discoverer. See <i>Using Oracle Web Discoverer Concepts and Procedures</i> for more information on Worksheets and Workbooks.
■ Workbook	Workbooks are made up of related Worksheets grouped together into a Workbook. See <i>Using Oracle Web Discoverer Concepts and Procedures</i> for more information on Worksheets and Workbooks.

Launching Discoverer

Oracle Discoverer is interface software that allows users to view and select records from complex databases without knowledge of the database structures or even Structured Query Language (SQL).

Discoverer generates Workbooks which are lists of records similar in design to a spreadsheet. Workbooks may then be used to generate Lists as well as provide a SQL statement for a Segment.

To Launch Discoverer, navigate to Audience > Discoverer. Oracle Discoverer will be launched in a new browser window.

Data Sources

You primarily use Data Sources primarily in List Generation in conjunction with a Discoverer Workbook. Data Sources are mappings of columns from a source table or view to the Marketing List Entries table (AMS_LIST_ENTRIES). This mapping provides the necessary information for the List Generation process to copy the information from the source table or view to the Marketing List Entries table for use in List Management.

From Administration > Audience, click on the Data Sources hyper link. A list of defined Data Sources is displayed. Oracle Marketing Online provides several seeded Data Sources for use with the seeded Oracle Marketing Online Discoverer Business Areas. These seeded Data Sources are editable but should be used as templates so as to preserve the original intent.

There are two types of Data Sources – Master and Sub Type. A Master type is typically the highest level of detail information needed for List Generation. For example, Person Details is a Master type which contains information such as the person’s full name, marital status, household income, and household size. The phone information about the person is a Sub Type and contains information such as phone number, last contact date and time, and contact attempts. The phone information Sub Type can be associated not only with this Master type, but with others too.

The seeded Oracle Marketing Online Discoverer Business Areas provide folders with special Items that correspond to either Sub Type or Master Data Sources. The Items in the folders for the Sub Type Data Sources all start with the word “Include”. The one special Item in the folder for the Master Data Source is identified as Mandatory Identifier. This item is the Primary Key as defined in the Master Data Source.

As a user creates a Workbook in Oracle Discoverer, the Mandatory Identifier Item must be selected. Depending on the user’s other desired attributes for the list, users can optionally select one or more of the Include Items.

For example, to include the Fax number and Email of a Person or Organization, select “Include Fax” and “Include Email” respectively. These Items, when found during the List Generation process, provide the necessary information for the generation process to find the associated Sub Type Data Sources and map the columns from each Data Source to the Marketing List Entries table.

References

[Understanding the Marketing Online Person List Management Business Area](#)

Understanding the Marketing Online Organization List Management Business Area

Using Multiple Data Sources

Lists may be created by combining more than one record sources. Each record source is incorporated in the order specified. There are three different ways of combining multiple record sources:

- **Include:** all records in the record source are included in the List.
- **Intersection:** Only records which appear in the data source and in the List, up to that point, remain on the List. This method is used to create a list of records having attributes of all of the data sources. For example, several lists of college graduates are included and then intersected with a list of New York state residents. The resulting List contains only college graduates who live in New York state.
- **Exclude:** Records are excluded from the List.

Workbooks, Worksheets, and Oracle Web Discoverer

Oracle Marketing Online includes Oracle Web Discoverer, a separate application which non-technical users can create database queries for list creation.

This topic explains a few key terms:

- [Folders, items, and the End User Layer \(EUL\)](#)
- [Worksheets](#)
- [Workbooks](#)
- [Conditions](#)

Folders, Items, and the End User Layer (EUL)

Oracle Web Discoverer's graphical user interface represents query results as folders and items. Users move these from left to right to create a complex query without having to view the individual table sources.

The folders represent different objects in the database. The Person Languages folder, for example, lists all of the language attributes for languages related to a person. These folders combined logically together represent a Business Area.

Oracle Marketing Online team has created Business Areas in Oracle Web Discoverer that are specific to marketing. All these Business Areas together comprise the End User Layer.

References

- [The Person List Management Business Area](#)
- [The Organization List Management Business Area](#)

Worksheets

The query you create by moving the folders and items to the right side of the window is called a worksheet. It is these individual worksheets that you use in the list creation process.

Workbooks

When you save the query, Discoverer automatically creates a workbook for the worksheet. In this respect, Discoverer is analogous to Microsoft Excel where each sheet is stored in a book.

Conditions

You can apply a condition to the worksheet to further constrain the query. For example, if you wish to create a worksheet that retrieves only the contact and email records for one organization, the Global Enterprise organization, then the condition you will use is `Organization Name = Global Enterprise`

See [Launching Discoverer](#)

List Management Business Areas

This new out-of-the-box Discoverer Business Area helps to simplify the task of segmentation and list management for consumer (Person) and business (Organization) customers and prospects.

Folders within the Business Area have been joined within Discoverer Administration to hide the complexity of the Oracle's eBusiness Customer Model from marketing users.

Person

The Marketing Online Person List Management Business Area contains intuitive folders and items that enable marketers to create Discoverer Workbooks that select **persons** meeting specified criteria. The criteria are based on attributes of an individual such as profile information (languages, interests, employment, education), demographics, historical interactions with the enterprise (such as

previous orders), campaign and event solicitation history, and list source information.

EXAMPLE: You need to create a list of persons that satisfy the below criteria. This Business Area contains all necessary folders and items for a marketer to select a list of persons that meet this criteria.

- Live in France
- Speak English
- Have been customers for at least one year
- Have master's degrees
- Have been working for more than 2 years
- Have a current balance with the enterprise of over \$100
- O.K. to contact via e-mail
- Have not been solicited in a campaign in the last 3 months
- Have interacted with our call center agency 5 times or more in the past year
- Have purchased a certain product in the past 6 months

The folders and items listed below are an example of what to select to produce the above results. Conditions should be created as appropriate to specifically produce the result set of the above example. For example, create a condition on Language Name where the abbreviated Language Name is equal to English.

Folder	Items
Person List Details	Mandatory ID Include Email Include Fax Person Name Country Name
Person Languages	Language Name
Person Education	Degree Received
Person Employment	Employment Begin Date

Folder	Items
Organization and Person Quotes and Orders All	Ordered Date Payment Amount Marketing Source Code Identifier
Organization and Person Contact Restrictions	Do Not Contact Type

Organization

The Marketing Online Organization List Management Business Area contains intuitive folders and items that enable marketers to create Discoverer Workbooks that select contacts for or employees of **organizations** meeting specified criteria. The criteria are based on attributes of the organization as well as persons within the organization, and include the following: organization and person profile information, account and contact information, interactions with the enterprise (such as previous orders), campaign and event solicitation history, and list source information.

You can accomplish the following approaches to Business to Business (B2B) list selection using the Marketing Online Organization List Management *Business Area*.

- Organization-related criteria (Company Profile and Financials)
- Account and Account Roles
- Contact Persons or “Employees Of” and their roles
- Sites and Locations

Users can define organization criteria first and then pull in all related contact persons, OR users can define the contact persons first and pull in related organization information.

EXAMPLE 1: Organization criteria followed by Contact Person criteria

Determine which Organizations meet the following criteria:

- High-tech businesses based on SIC code
- Number of employees greater than 1000
- Have been in business for more than 2 years
- Have not been solicited in a campaign last 3 months
- Have interacted with our call center agency 5 times or more in the past year

- Have purchased a certain product in the past 6 months

Then apply the Contact Person criteria to obtain the marketing list:

- Contact is an Information Technology Manager or equivalent
- O.K. to contact via e-mail

EXAMPLE 2: Contact Person criteria first followed by Organization criteria

The folders and items listed below are an example of what to select to produce the above results. Conditions should be created as appropriate to specifically produce the result set of the above example. For example, create a condition on Employees Total where the Employees Total is greater than 1000.

Folder	Item
Organization Contact List Details	Mandatory ID
	Include Email
	Include Fax
	Party ID
	Party Contact Name
Organization List Details	Party ID
	Organization Name
	Employees Total
	SIC Code
Organization and Person Quotes and Orders All	Establishment Year
	Ordered Date
Organization and Person Contact Restrictions	Marketing Source Code Identifier
	Do Not Contact Type

Partners

The Partner subtab provides for the creation and management of information relating to Partner organizations. Partners may be of the following types:

Exchange Partners may participate in the opportunity exchange system between multiple Vendors and a Partner.

Sales Partners have a specific partner agreement that allows the Vendor to pass a sales deal to that Partner through Oracle Partners Online.

General Partners are any parties in the CRM modules that have a Partner Of relationship with another organization or person. General Partners include Sales and Exchange Partners.

Partner Detail

The Relationship page contains the following information about a specific Partner organization: the Partner level, purchase method, target revenue, Channel Manager name, the preferred Value Added Distributor (VAD), and revenue to date. Partner Details include the amount of money a Partner has made, the last assignment made, and whether it is a preferred VAD.

Oracle Marketing Online supports an internal vendor who may pass sales opportunities to only their Oracle Partners. Oracle Marketing Online captures some critical opportunity exchange information to enable integration to the opportunity exchange type of functionality within the CRM suite.

Partner Contacts

The Partner Contacts subtab offers a filtered view of specific Partner contacts. The Summary Page displays only those parties who have been identified with a Partner or Value Added Distributor relationship.

Lists

Audience > Lists

53, incorrect

you can query your own database via Discoverer, not necessarily external databases.

You create lists by querying your database from segments or purchased and rented lists using Oracle Discoverer. You can also create them from multiple record sources or by manually adding entries from people and organizations lists already in your database.

You can create Suppression Lists to remove specified records as you generate Target Groups. For more information on lists, see the following sections:

- [Selecting a Target Group for a Campaign Schedule.](#)

Reusing and Regenerating Lists

Lists may be associated with multiple objects. For example, a three-part campaign may use the same list without having to recreate it. Lists may also be regenerated by opening the list and regenerating it. See [Selecting a Target Group for a Campaign Schedule.](#)

Analytics

This topic group provides overviews of the application and its components, explanations of key concepts, features, and functions, as well as the relationship of the application to other Oracle or third-party applications.

Models

Marketers without extensive knowledge of statistics can take advantage of our out-of-the-box integration with Oracle9i Data Mining to help answer two common marketing questions:

- Who is most likely to respond to our marketing campaign?
- Who is most likely to end their relationship with our organization?

Finding answers to these questions involves building a model of customers and/or prospects based on how they have behaved in the past and using that model to score the population you wish to target.

This topic outlines the process. It covers:

- [Model templates](#)
- [Building the model](#)
- [Evaluating the model](#)
- [Improving your model's results](#)

Model Templates

Oracle Marketing Online includes four templates which automate the process of model building. You use three for Response modeling and one for Loyalty/Retention modeling.

Model Template	Use
Response Model	Use these templates to build models to predict which customers and/or prospects are most likely to respond to email, telemarketing, and direct mail campaigns
Loyalty / Retention Model	Use this template to build models to predict which customers are likely to defect based on attributes of customers who have closed their accounts with your organization.

Building the Model

The application builds a predictive model by examining data about customers and/or prospects who have exhibited similar behavior in the past. This means you must have information about a population that has been targeted by a similar campaign in the past and you must know how each individual responded.

The characteristics of the population you use to build the model must be similar to the target population. If you wish to conduct a telemarketing campaign for consumers, for example, then you will want the model to learn from the population of consumers targeted by a consumer telemarketing campaign you have conducted in the past.

The historical data you use to build the model can come from past campaigns, data you have collected using your CRM applications, or data you have purchased from outside vendors and imported into the database. If you do not have this information you must create and execute a test campaign before you can create a model.

To create the model, the application examines a number of customer attributes in the database. These cover demographic information such as age, gender, and income as well as historical information about a customer. This includes the number of times the customer has been contacted, the number of times they have purchased a product, the number of service orders they have opened, and so on.

Different types of models examine slightly different subsets of the attributes depending on the target audience. For example, data for a model for a telesales campaign targeting organization contacts include the company's number of employees, annual revenue, and business transaction history. Building a model for a

telesales campaign targeting persons will not include this information, but rather very detailed personal information such as age, household income, and personal transaction history. See the *Oracle Marketing Online Implementation Guide* for a full list of attributes used for modeling.

Note: Building models based on a large number of customers and attributes can put a load on your system so it is generally a good idea to schedule a model build for a time when your server is not being used very much.

Evaluating the Model

As the application builds a model, it automatically checks the model's accuracy by applying the conditions it has created to a holdout sample of the historical data set distinct from the data it's trained on. Because the behavior of the historical population is known, the accuracy of the model can be calculated.

You can examine model performance using the Performance Matrix Report and the Lift Chart.

Report	Use
Performance Matrix	This report tells you the model's accuracy for making predictions. For more information, see About the Performance Matrix Report .
Lift Chart	This report gives you a graphical representation of the benefits of using the model over contacting customers at random. For more information, see About the Lift Chart .

Improving Your Model's Results

There are a number of ways to manipulate and improve modeling results. These include:

- Increasing population size
- Improving the quality of customer data
- Focusing on characteristics
- Splitting the target

Increasing Population Size

On average, larger training data sets produce more accurate results. While there is no minimum number, the data set should include thousands if not tens of thousands of customers and/or prospects for good results.

Improving the Quality of Customer Data

If your data is missing many of the attributes, the models will still work, but will not be as accurate. You should consider using other Oracle CRM products as these will automatically fill in the required customer data. For a list of attributes used in models, see the *Oracle Marketing Online Implementation Guide*.

Focusing on Characteristics

Choose a training population with characteristics that are as close as possible to the target population. The more similar the two populations, the better the model will be in making predictions.

Splitting the Target

Split the target population and build multiple specialized models. A more precisely targeted audience will give you more precise results. For example, a shoe retailer may wish to build a separate model for marketing to males and females because the two markets behave very differently. The results may be even better if the shoe retailer builds a separate model for different age groups of consumers: kids, adults, and seniors.

Scoring a Target Population with Your Model

After you are satisfied that your model is accurate, you are ready to score the population you wish to use for your marketing efforts. You can score a combination of lists, Discoverer workbooks, and segments. The process for specifying the population you wish to score is very much the same as that for creating lists.

During scoring, the model sorts the target population into ten segments grouped by predicted probabilities of displaying the target behavior (response or defection). Each decile represents a group of customers/prospects with associated probabilities of responding to your campaign or defecting, depending on the underlying model. The deciles are ordered by the response/defection probability, from the highest to the lowest: 90% - 100%, 80% - 89.99%, 70% - 79.99%, and so on. Based on the information displayed, you can select those groups with highest probability of exhibiting a target behavior, and generate the list of targets for the follow up

campaign. For more information, see the section on [Scoring Run Results](#) found later in this chapter.

Model Status

The status field of a model tells you whether a model is available for use or is in preparation. It also tells you if you can modify or copy the model.

You can sometimes manually change the status of the model. Whether and how you can change a model status is determined by the current status of the model.

The table below explains the seeded statuses. It tells you the meaning of each status, the status levels you can reset it to, what fields you can modify, and if you can copy models with that status.

Status	Meaning	Can be reset to	What you can modify	What you can copy
Draft	All new models have this status initially.	Archived	All fields except Model Type and Target Audience.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Draft.
Scheduled	Model is scheduled to be built.	Draft, Archived	All fields except Model Type and Target Audience can be modified prior to the build date.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Draft.
Unscheduled	The scheduled build was cancelled by removing the schedule date or by changing the status to Draft.	Draft, Archived	All fields except Model Type and Target Audience can be modified.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Draft.
Building	The application is in the process of building the model. When the model building is complete, the application notifies the model owner.	You cannot reset the status.	All model fields are locked and cannot be modified.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Draft.

Status	Meaning	Can be reset to	What you can modify	What you can copy
Scoring	The application is in the process of using your model to score a target population.	You cannot reset the status.	All model fields are locked and cannot be modified.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Draft.
Available	Model is built and available for a scoring run or for another training session on a new set of historical data. If you rebuild the model on a different set of data, then the results of the previous model build are purged.	Archived	All fields except Model Type and Target Audience can be modified.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Available.
Expired	The model expires at the end of the date you enter in the Expiration Date field.	Available, Archived You can change the status back to available by removing the expiration date or extending it.	Only the Expiration date can be changed. All other fields are locked.	Create an identical model with a different name and status of Available.
Archived	An archived model does not appear in the list of models in the All Models view. The application automatically deletes any data mining source data for the model.	You cannot reset the status.	All model fields are locked and cannot be modified.	Cannot be copied.

About the Performance Matrix Report

The Performance Matrix displays information about the accuracy of your model in two formats: as record counts, and as percentages.

The Counts table displays the number of correct and incorrect predictions the model made. It consists of three rows (Predicted Correctly, Predicted Incorrectly, and Total) and three columns (Responders, Non-Responders, and Total). In the

following sample report the model Predicted Correctly 4,087 Responders and 93,893 Non-Responders. These total to 97,980 correct predictions out of the 102,888 records.

Counts

	Responders	Non-Responders	Total
Predicted Correctly	4,087	93,893	97,980
Predicted Incorrectly	779	4,129	4,908
Total	4,866	98,022	102,888

The overall Accuracy Rate for the model is 95.23% (total % of correct predictions).

The overall Error Rate for the model is 4.77% (total % of incorrect predictions).

Displayed directly below the Counts table is the model's overall accuracy rate. The accuracy rate of this sample model is calculated as the total number of overall correct predictions divided by the total number of records: $97,980/102,888 = 0.9523 = 95.23\%$. This is a very high accuracy rate. If the model predictions were no better than chance then the accuracy rate would be 50%.

The error rate of a model is calculated as 100% minus the accuracy rate: $100\% - 95.23\% = 4.77\%$. You can also compute this rate by dividing the total number of overall incorrect predictions by the total number of records: $4,908/102,888 = 0.0477 = 4.77\%$.

You may wish to consider how the other figures in this table may be important to your business. For example, which is less harmful for your business: to spend campaign funds on targeting those customers/prospects who potentially won't respond, or to miss those who potentially would respond? You might consider the 4,129 incorrectly predicted non-responders as an opportunity, because even though they currently do not fit the profile of a responder, they still may respond to your next campaign. On the other hand, the 779 incorrectly predicted responders could be considered a mistake because these incorrect predictions would produce a loss of potential revenue.

The report also displays the model's correct and incorrect predictions of responders and non-responders in percentages. The Percentages table looks like a smaller version of the Counts table without the Total row and column. The entries in this table are displayed in percentages. In the sample report below you can see, for instance, that the model Predicted Correctly 83.99% of Responders and 95.79% of Non-Responders.

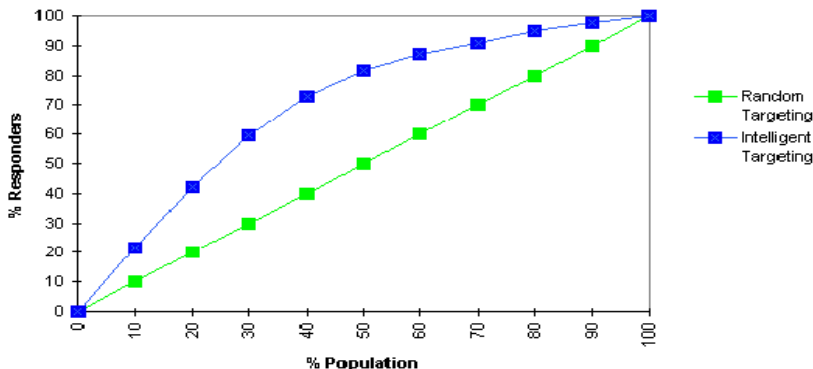
Percentages

	Responders	Non-Responders
Predicted Correctly	83.99%	95.79%
Predicted Incorrectly	16.01%	4.21%

If your model did not perform as well as expected, see [Ways to Improve Your Model's Results](#) for further details.

About the Lift Chart

The lift chart gives you an idea of the benefits you will receive when you use the model as opposed to targeting a population at random.



The above example displays a typical Lift Chart with the x axis showing the percentage of the total target population and the y axis showing the percentage of the population with the target characteristics. For a response model, this means the percentage of responders. For a loyalty/retention model, this means the percentage of defectors, or the customers who closed their accounts.

The lines in this graph represent the percentage of the total population on the x axis you must target to reach the desired % responders or % defectors on the y axis.

The straight line running diagonally from the origin of the graph shows what would happen if you picked a sample at random. It is flat and runs in the middle of the graph because the proportion of the desirable population does not change by increasing the number of people you target. If you target 30 percent of the population at random, you will get 30 percent of the people with the desired behavior. If you target 45 percent of the population at random, you will get 45 percent, and so on.

The curved line shows you the advantage the model gives you. The more the line curves to the upper left hand corner of the graph, the more benefit you will achieve with the model. The more the curved line approaches the straight line, the less of an advantage the model gives you.

Reading different points along the lines can tell you what percentage of the total population you need to target to reach a percentage of the people you would like to reach. Using the above model, for example, you need to contact only 30% of the population to reach 60% of the responders. This means that in order to get the same response rate as random targeting, you now only have to target your campaign to half as many people. This outcome clearly demonstrates the increase in campaign ROI that can be achieved using predictive modeling.

Scoring Run Status

A scoring run is the process of using a model to predict behavior of a target population. During this process, every customer/prospect gets assigned a score of 1 or 0 depending on whether he/she is more likely to respond or not respond to your campaign, or stay loyal or defect. The status field of a scoring run tells you:

- Whether the scoring process is or is still in preparation.
- Whether you can modify or copy the scoring run setup. For example, you may wish to copy a scoring run to try a different predictive model.

You can sometimes change the status of a scoring run yourself, for example, to indicate a scoring run is no longer available for use. Whether and how a scoring run status can be changed is determined by its current status setting.

The table below explains the seeded statuses. It tells you the meaning of each status, the status levels you can reset it to, what fields you can modify, and if you can copy scoring runs with that status.

Status	Meaning	Can reset to	What you can modify	What you can copy
Draft	Initial status for all scoring runs.	Archived	All fields can be modified.	Create an identical scoring run with a different name and status of Draft.
Scheduled	The scoring run is scheduled.	Draft, Archived	All fields can be modified prior to the scheduled date.	Create an identical scoring run with a different name and status of Draft.
Scoring	The application is in the process of scoring the target population. When scoring is complete, the application notifies the scoring run owner.	You cannot reset the status.	All scoring run fields are locked and cannot be modified.	Create an identical scoring run with a different name and status of Draft.
Completed	The scoring run is complete. If scoring run results are invalid, you can schedule a “re-scoring run” with the same data selection only.	Archived	All scoring run fields are locked and cannot be modified except those in Attachments, Notes, and Tasks.	Create an identical scoring run with a different name and status of Draft.
Archived	An archived scoring run does not appear in the list of scoring runs in the All Scoring Runs view. The application automatically deletes any data mining source data for the scoring run.	You cannot reset the status.	All scoring run fields are locked and cannot be modified.	Cannot be copied.

Scoring Run Results

You can view the Scoring Run Details - Results report after you have scored the population of customers and/or prospects you wish to target with your new campaign. This report can also be used to create the list of customers you wish to target.

Interpreting Scoring Run Results

Here is a sample report for a Response model. A table with a description of each column follows this report.

Decile	Probability of Response	% of Records	Include in List
1	90-100%	7.84%	x
2	80-89.99%	12.65%	x
3	70-79.99%	7.70%	x
4	60-69.99%	10.40%	x
5	50-59.99%	9.53%	
6	40-49.99%	7.21%	
7	30-39.99%	12.26%	
8	20-29.99%	9.70%	
9	10-19.99%	11.22%	
10	0-9.99%	11.49%	

The following table gives a description of each of the columns on a scoring run report.

Column	Description
Decile	Each number represents a group of customers/prospects with an associated probability range of responding to your campaign. The deciles are ordered by the probability of response, from the highest to the lowest. The first decile includes a group of customers/prospects with 90-100% likelihood of response, the second decile includes those who are estimated to be 80-89.99% likely to respond to your campaign, and so on
Probability of Response	The predicted probability that people in the segment exhibit the target behavior. You will want to select the deciles with the highest predicted probabilities for your list. Note that for a Loyalty/Retention model, this column changes to Probability of Closed Account, and represents the likelihood of customers/prospects belonging to each segment defecting in the near future.

Column	Description
% of Records	This column shows the percentage of the records in the population which fall into each segment.
Include in List	Select the checkboxes corresponding to the deciles you wish to include in your list.

Scoring a large number of customers may impact your system's performance. Therefore, consider scheduling your scoring runs for off-peak hours.

Attachments

An attachment is a file or URL associated with a marketing object. Attachments provide a methodology for maintaining necessary files in inaccessible area.

Notes

Notes are a free form record of information regarding a marketing object. Notes are displayed with their type, text, author and date. Notes become a permanent part of the object.

Using Oracle Marketing Online

This topic group provides process-oriented, task-based procedures for using the application to perform essential business tasks.

The Home Tab

Use the Home tab to view key marketing performance information and link to recently accessed campaigns and events.

For help on the following topics, click the appropriate link:

- [Home tab bins, reports and charts](#)
- [Using Home tab most recent bins](#)
- [Viewing Home tab reporting and key metric bins](#)
- [Viewing Home tab reports](#)
- [Viewing Home tab charts](#)
- [Selecting and removing Home page bins, reports and charts](#)
- [Editing a Home page bin](#)
- [Editing a Home page report](#)
- [Editing a Home page chart](#)

Home Tab Bins, Reports and Charts

The Home tab provides the option to display configurable bins, reports and charts. For more information about these objects, see [Understanding the Home Page](#).

References:

[The Home Page](#)

Using Home Tab Most Recent Bins

The Home tab provides shortcuts to the campaigns and events you have accessed most recently via bins. The shortcuts are generated automatically when you create or edit a campaign or event. This procedure describes the use of these shortcuts.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home subtab
2. Click on a hyperlink in a bin to display the indicated item.

Guidelines

You can specify the number of recently accessed objects you wish to see by clicking Edit.

Viewing Home Tab Reporting and Key Metric Bins

Various informational bins are displayable in the Home page. These bins are displayed along the left side of the screen. This procedure describes how to view them.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home subtab

Guidelines

You can specify the number of rows to display in a reporting bin by clicking Edit. You can specify the bins to display from the Personalize link.

Viewing Home Tab Reports

Several reports are available for display on the Home page. These reports are displayed along the right side of the screen. This procedure describes how to view them.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home subtab

Guidelines

You can specify the number of rows to display by clicking Edit. You can specify the reports to display from the Personalize link.

Viewing Home Tab Charts

Several charts are available for display on the Home page. These charts are displayed along the left side of the screen. This procedure describes how to view them.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home subtab

Guidelines

You can specify the number of objects to display in the Chart by clicking Edit. You can specify the charts to display from the Personalize link.

Selecting and Removing Home Page Bins, Reports and Charts

You can select which bins, reports and charts to display on your Home page based on user responsibility. The list includes bins from all Oracle Applications for that responsibility.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home.

2. Click **Personalize**.
3. Select the bins for display from the Available Columns and move to the right for the *Narrow Column*.
4. Select the bins to not display from the Displayed Columns and move to the left for the *Narrow Column*.
5. Select the reports and charts for display from the Available Columns and move to the right for the *Wide Column*.
6. Select the reports and charts to not display from the Displayed Columns and move to the left for the *Wide Column*.
7. Click **Update**.

Editing a Home Page Bin

Each bin you select for display on your Home page can be configured.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home.
2. Click **Edit** in the upper right corner of the desired bin.
3. Click the **Parameters** link in the side navigation.
4. Select how data should be aggregated in the bin.
5. Click the Personalize link in the side navigation.
6. Enter a number for Batch Size. (Note: This represents the number of rows to display.)
7. Select the columns for display from the Available Columns and move to the right.
8. Select the columns to not display from the Displayed Columns and move to the left.
9. Optionally, move the columns up or down for the order of display.
10. Click **Update**.

Editing a Home Page Report

The report you select for display on your Home page can be configured.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home.
2. Click **Edit** in the upper right corner of the chart.
3. Click the Personalize link in the side navigation.
4. Enter a number for Batch Size. (Note: This represents the number of rows to display.)
5. Select the columns for display from the Available Columns and move to the right.
6. Select the columns to not display from the Displayed Columns and move to the left.
7. Optionally, move the columns up or down for the order of display.
8. Click **Update**.

Editing a Home Page Chart

The chart you select for display on your Home page can be configured.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Home > Home
2. Click **Edit** in the upper right corner of the chart.
3. Click the Parameters link in the side navigation
4. Select the Quarter.
5. Select the Year.
6. Click the Personalize link in the side navigation

7. Enter a number for Batch Size. (Note: This represents the number of objects to display.)
8. Click **Update**.

References

[The Home Page](#)

Setting Profile Preferences

Use this procedure to change your profile preferences for the application. This includes, the date format you wish to use, the number of shortcuts on your home page, and the number of items that appear in the lists of objects on each tab, and so on.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Click the Profile link at the top right of the window. The General Preferences page is displayed.
2. To select a different format for entering dates, make a selection from the Date Format drop-down list.
3. To change the Number of rows the application displays in tables, select a different number from the Rows Per Page drop-down list in the Table Display section.
4. To change the number of blank rows you can use for entry in a table, select a different number in the Blank Rows Per Table Field in the Table Display section.
5. Click **Update**.
6. Select the Marketing item from the Side Panel Menu.
7. To change the Country, Time Zone or the number of search results rows displayed, select a new value from the drop-down list.
8. Click Update.
9. Select the Personal item from the Side Panel Menu to change the User information and password.
10. Click **Update**.

The Product Tab

Use the product tab to manage products and their price lists.

For help on the following topics, click the appropriate link:

- [Searching for Products in Inventory](#)
- [Viewing Product or Product Bundle Details](#)
- [Creating a Product or a Product Bundle](#)
- [Viewing Offers for Products](#)
- [Specifying Products for a Product Bundle](#)
- [Specifying Upsell and Cross Sell and Other Related Items](#)
- [Making a Product or Product Bundle Available for Inventory Transactions](#)
- [Adding a Product or Product Bundle to Price Lists](#)
- [Modifying a Product or a Product Bundle](#)
- [Displaying a Price List](#)
- [Creating a Price List](#)
- [Modifying a Price List](#)

Searching For Products in Inventory

Use this procedure to search for a product or product bundle in inventory. For performance reasons, only one inventory location may be searched at a time.

Prerequisites

You must know at least one of the inventory locations or the master organization for the product or bundle.

Steps

1. Navigate to **Product > Product Search**. The Search page appears.
2. Enter the name of the warehousing organization or the master organization for the product or product bundle.
3. Enter other optional search parameters. Partial entries may be used in the search fields. Use the % sign to indicate unknown characters.

4. Click **Search**. The Product Search Results window appears listing any products or product bundles that meet your search criteria.
5. To view more details on a product, click on its link.
6. If you need to refine your search further, select Refine Search and modify your search criteria.

Guidelines

Here are details on some of the search terms:

- **Product Type:** This is equivalent to User Item Type in Oracle Inventory. See the Main Attribute Group section of the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide* for more information.
- **Product Number:** Inventory number.
- **Related To:** Product with an established relationship to the product you wish to find, such as a cross sell or upsell item. This List of Values displays all products associated with the master organization.
- **Relationship Type:** Type of relationship you wish to search on. For example, upsell or cross sell. You can only enter this field if you have made an entry in the Related to field.

Viewing Product or Product Bundle Details

Use this procedure to display a product or product bundle.

Steps

1. Navigate to the Product tab. The Products subtab displays a list of inventory products and bundles created within Oracle Marketing Online.
2. The list is sortable by clicking on the different column headings and scroll through the items in the list using the controls provided.
3. Click a product link to display or modify the product details.
4. If the desired product is not on the list, select the Product Search subtab and search for the product.

Creating a Product or Product Bundle in Inventory

Use this procedure to create a new product or a new product bundle in Oracle Inventory.

The process for creating a product bundle is almost the same as that for creating a product. The only difference is that you must add the products to be bundled in the Bundling item on the side panel menu after you have created the bundle.

Prerequisites

An understanding of the organization's inventory practices and inventory numbering conventions.

Steps

1. Navigate to **Product > Products**.
2. Click **Create**. The Create Product page appears.
3. To create a product, select the Standard radio button.
4. To create a a product bundle, select the Bundled radio button.
5. Enter a name for the product or bundle.
6. Enter an inventory part number for the product or bundle, following your organization's guidelines for creating inventory numbers.
7. Select one of the three radio buttons:
 - **Service**: Select if the product or bundle is a service.
 - **Serviceable Product**: Select if the product or bundle has one or more services associated with it. Selecting this option makes it possible for the organization to add services to this product via Order Management.
 - **Non-Serviceable Product**: Select if the product that has no services associated with it.
8. Select a product type. Product types are the item types provided by Oracle with Oracle Inventory and any item types created by your organization.
9. Click **Go** in the Master Organization field and use the List of Values (LOV) select the name of your internal organization in charge of creating products in inventory.
10. Click **Go** in the Unit of Measurement List of Values (LOV) and select a unit of measure for this product or product bundle.
11. If you wish to assign this product to someone else in your organization, then click **Go** in the Unit of Owner field and use the LOV to select another individual.

12. Optionally, select a status. In the current release, status is for informational purposes only.
13. Optionally, enter a product description.
14. Enter the date of item availability in the Effective Date field.
15. Select one or more of the following check boxes (see Guidelines section for a detailed explanation):
 - Orderable
 - Stockable (Select this check box to select Transactable.)
 - Transactable (This check box is only available if you first select Stockable.)
 - Invoiceable
 - Shippable
 - Returnable
 - Cost Enabled
 - BOM Allowed

16. Click **Create**.

The Product Detail page appears displaying a side panel menu for entering additional information.

You can now enter additional information by selecting an item from the Side Panel Menu.

- [Enter upsell, cross sell, and other related items for this product in Related Products.](#)
- [Assign this product to different warehousing organizations in Organization Assignments.](#)

Guidelines

Oracle Marketing Online gives access to the basic features of Oracle Inventory. Depending on your business practices, an organization may have to set up further details for the product or bundle in Oracle Inventory before the product can be manufactured and shipped to customers. These guidelines explain some of the Oracle Inventory terminology and attributes used. For a more complete explanation, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Term	Description
Product Type	This is equivalent to User Item Type in Oracle Inventory.
Master Organization	Item Master Organization in Oracle Inventory. This is the internal organization that defines items in inventory.
Master Organization: Orderable	Selecting this check box sets Customer Ordered on and Customer Orders Enabled off. This enables pricing for the item but prevents the item from being ordered by external customers. Before the item can be ordered by external customers, your organization must use Oracle Inventory to set Customer Orders Enabled on.
Stockable	Selecting Stockable allows a product or bundle to be stocked in inventory. Selecting this option enables you to select the Transactable check box.
Transactable	Selecting Transactable permits inventory transactions for the item. You can only select this check box if you have selected Stockable.
Invoiceable	Selecting this check box sets Invoiceable Item on and Invoice Enabled off. The on value of Invoiceable Item means that this item is activated for invoicing and appears in the Invoice Entry item list of values in Oracle Receivables.
Shippable	Selecting this check box sets Shippable on, indicating that this item may be shipped to customers. This causes the item to be released to Oracle Shipping Execution's Pick Release program.
Returnable	Selecting this check box sets Returnable on, allowing customers to return an item. If an item is returnable, it may be entered the Returns window in Oracle Order Management. Order Management uses this attribute along with Stockable and Transactable to determine which items may be received in inventory.
Cost Enabled	Turns Costing Enabled on. This tracks item costs. You may want to deselect this option to disable costing for reference items, or for invoice only (non-stock) items that you never ship and never hold in inventory.
BOM Allowed	Turns BOM (Bill of Materials) Allowed on. This allows you to define a bill of materials for the item in Inventory, or to assign the item as a component on a bill. This option is selected automatically if you are creating a bundled product. The Bill of Materials may be completed in Oracle Inventory.

Viewing Product or Product Bundle Offers

Use this procedure to view the offers associated with a product or product bundle.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the details page for the desired product or product bundle.
2. Select the Offers item from the side panel menu. The Product Details -- Offers page displays offers associated with the selected product.
3. To create an offer for a product or associate an existing offer with it, follow the procedure for Creating and Associating Offers for a Product or Product Bundle.

Specifying Products for a Product Bundle

Use this procedure to specify the products for a product bundle created within Oracle Marketing Online.

Prerequisites

- The products you wish to bundle must already exist in inventory.
- The product bundle must exist before adding the list of products.

Steps

1. Navigate to **Product > Product > Bundling**. The Bundling page displays.
2. For every component of the bundle:
 - a. In a blank Product Name field, click **Go** and use the List of Values to enter the product.
 - b. Enter the quantity of the product you wish to include in the bundle.
3. To delete a component from the bundle, select the Remove check box corresponding to the item you wish to delete.
4. Click **Update**.

Specifying Upsell, Cross Sell, and Other Related Items for a Product

Use this procedure to specify an upsell, cross sell, substitute, and other related items for a product created in Oracle Marketing Online. You can specify any product in inventory as a related product whether or not that related product has been created in Oracle Marketing Online.

Prerequisites

- The products you wish to select as related items must already exist in inventory.
- You must display the details of a product you wish to modify first.

Steps

1. Select the **Related Products** item from the side panel menu.
The Product Detail - Related Products page appears.
2. For each related item you wish to add:
 - a. In a blank Product Name field, click **Go** and use the List of Values (LOV) to pick the item. This LOV includes all products in inventory.
 - b. From the Relationship Type drop-down list, select the relationship.
 - c. If the relationship applies in both directions, then select the Reciprocal check box.

If you specify computer model A to be a substitute for computer model B, for example, then selecting this check box means that model B is also a substitute for model A.
3. To delete a related item, select the Remove check box corresponding to the item you wish to delete.
4. Click **Update**.

Making a Product or Product Bundle Available for Inventory Transactions

Use this procedure to make a product or product bundle available to organizations for inventory transactions such as warehouse stocking.

Prerequisites

Navigate to the desired product and display the details page.

Steps

1. Select the Organization Assignments item from the side panel menu.
The Product Detail - Organization Assignments page displays.
2. For each organization:
 - a. In a blank Organization Name field, click **Go** and use the List of Values to select an organization.
 - b. Optionally, use the List of Values to pick the unit of measurement.
3. To delete an organization, select the Remove check box corresponding to the item you wish to delete.
4. Click **Update**.

Adding a Product or Product Bundle to Price Lists

Use this procedure to add a product to one or more existing price lists using the Price Lists side panel menu item.

Prerequisites

Display the product details page before you can make entries in the Price Lists page.

Steps

1. Select the Price Lists side panel menu item. The Product Detail - Price Lists page displays.
2. Add the product to one or more price lists. To select a price list:
 - a. In a blank Name field, click **Go** and use the List of Values (LOV) to select the price list.
 - b. Enter the price.
 - c. Enter the Unit of Measure (UOM) using the LOV.
 - d. Enter the start date when the price becomes effective.
 - e. Optionally, enter an end date.
3. Click **Update**.

Modifying a Product or a Product Bundle

Use this procedure to modify an existing product or product bundle. Following is a

Prerequisites

Only a product or product bundle created within Oracle Marketing Online may be modified from within Oracle Marketing Online.

Steps

1. Modify the following product information as desired.
 - Product Name
 - The type of product by selecting one of the following radio buttons:
 - * Service: Select to make the product a service
 - * Serviceable Product: Select to make the product a product that has one or more services associated with it.
 - * Non-Serviceable Product: Select to make the product non-serviceable.
 - Product Type
 - Product Owner
 - Product Description
 - Effective Date: The date the item will be available.
 - Inventory option check boxes:
 - * Orderable
 - * Stockable (Select this check box to select Transactable.
 - * Transactable (This check box is only available if you first select Stockable.
 - * Invoiceable
 - * Shippable
 - * Returnable
 - * Cost Enabled
 - * BOM Allowed: If this item is a product bundle, this option is selected automatically.
2. Click **Update**.
3. To create offers or associate existing offers to the product or the product bundle, follow the procedure in *Creating Offers for a Product or Product Bundle*.

More information for the product or product bundle may be entered by selecting one of the items from the side panel menu.

Guidelines

Oracle Marketing Online gives access to the basic features of Oracle Inventory. Depending on its business practices, an organization may require additional information to be added in Oracle Inventory before the product or bundle may be manufactured and shipped to customers. See Guidelines in the section titled [Creating a Product or Product Bundle in Inventory](#) for a description of each editable field. For a more complete explanation, see *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Displaying Price List

Use this procedure to display a price list.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Product > Price Lists**.
2. By making a selection from the View drop-down list, you can view all price lists or restrict the view to the price lists you have created (My Price Lists).
3. The list may be sortable by selecting one of the links in the column headings.
4. To view or modify the details of a price list, select the price list name link and follow the procedure for [modifying a price list](#):

Creating a Price List

Use this procedure to create a price list.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Product > Price Lists**.
2. Click **Create**. The Price List Details window appears.

3. Enter a name for the price list.
4. Select a currency.
5. Select a status. In the current release, status is used for information only.
6. To assign a different person as the owner of the price list, select that individual using the Owner LOV.
7. Enter a start date when the price list will be available.
8. Optionally, enter an end date and a description.
9. For each product you wish to add to the price list:
 - a. Use the Product Number List of Values to select a product by its inventory number.
 - b. Select the unit of measure for the price.
 - c. Enter a price.
 - d. Enter the precedence for this price list. The precedence is a number which determines the order in which the pricing engine picks the price list in case the customer is eligible for two different prices for this product at this quantity. The lower the number, the higher the precedence.
 - e. If this particular price is valid for a limited time only, enter a start and an end date for this price.
10. Click **Create**.
11. To view a list of all items and prices you have created, click **View Report**.

Additional information may be added by selecting one of the items on the side panel menu.

References

Oracle Pricing Users Guide

Modifying an Existing Price List

Use this procedure to add new products and prices or otherwise modify a price list.

Note: You can modify only price lists created within Oracle Marketing Online.

Prerequisites

- Only price lists created within Oracle Marketing Online are modifiable within Oracle Marketing Online.
- Display the details of the price list you wish to modify

Steps

1. The following pricing information may be modified:
 - Name
 - Status: In this release, status is for informational purposes only.
 - Currency
 - Owner
 - Start Date: The date the price list becomes available.
 - End Date: The date the price list will be withdrawn.
 - Description
2. To add additional products to the price list:
 - a. Use the Product Number List of Values to select the product by its inventory number.
 - b. Select the unit of measure.
 - c. Enter a price.
 - d. Enter the precedence for this price list. The precedence is a number which determines the order in which the pricing engine picks a price list in case the customer is eligible for more than one price for this product at this quantity. The lower the number, the higher the precedence.
 - e. If this particular price is valid for a limited time only, enter a start and an end date for this price.
3. To remove a product from this price list, select the Remove check box next to it.
4. Click **Update**.

The Audience Tab

Use this tab to manage information external to Oracle Marketing Online. This includes information on customers and prospects, external organizations and

persons with whom your organization has a relationship, and partner organizations and contacts.

Help is available for the following topics:

- [Organization Summary Page](#)
- [Person Subtab](#)
- [Lists](#)
- [Segments](#)
- [Import](#)
- [Launching Discoverer](#)
- [Partners Subtab](#)
- [Creating/Viewing Partner Contacts](#)

Organization Summary Page

The Organization summary page displays all organizations for your sales team. The summary page may be personalized in order to display specific lists of organizations.

Personalizing the Organization Summary Page

Personalizing the Organization Summary Page allows the user to select which columns of information to display as well as selecting the particular organizations to display. Saved Searches allow the user to save customized displays of the Organization Summary Page.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click **Personalize**.
3. Change, add, or remove parameters.
4. Change, add, or remove display options.
5. Change, add, or remove sort options.

6. Enter a Search Name.
7. Select the Use as Summary Page Default check box.
8. Click **Save**, or **Save and Apply Search**. Saved Searches appear in the Saved Search drop down list on the Organization Summary Page.

Notes

The Advanced Search link and Personalize button display the same Organization Search page.

For more information on the Audience tab and subtabs, see [Audience](#) in the Understanding Oracle Marketing Online section of this guide.

Creating a New Organization

Use the following procedures to create a new organization.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Click **Create**.
2. Enter the required information. Enter any optional information.

The following table lists the Create Organization fields and a description of each.

Field	Description
Organization	The organization name is a required field.
Phonetic Organization Name	You can enter the organization name pronunciation.
Tax ID	Enter the tax identification code.
Email Address Book	Enter the email address here or click the email address book to select another address.
Customer Category	Select customer category from the drop down list.
Annual Revenue	Select the currency from the drop down list. Enter the annual company revenue into the next field.

Field	Description
Fiscal Year End	Select the fiscal year end from the drop down list.
Web Site Address Book	Enter the organization's web site or click the web address book icon to select another party web address to display.
External/Internal	By default External is selected. Use Internal only if you are creating your organization. If you want to create relationships between your organization and other external organizations
Alias	Enter an organization alias.
Phone book	Click the phone book link to select another party phone number to display.
Business Line	Enter a business line, if applicable.
Total Employees	Enter the total number of employees.
Year Established	Enter the year the organization was established.

The following table describes fields in the Address section of Create Organization.

Field	Description
Address Type	Select an address type from the list of values.
Address Line 1	Enter the organization address.
Address Line 2	Enter additional organization address information.
Address Line 3	Enter additional organization address information.
Address Line 4	Enter additional organization address information.
County	Enter in the county field.
Start Date	Select a start date by clicking the calendar icon and choosing a date.
Do Not Mail	Select the do not mail check box so that mail will not be sent to the address.
City	Enter in the city field.
State	Select from the drop down list.
Province	Select from the drop down list.
Postal Code	Enter in the postal code field.

Country	Select country from the drop down list.
End Date	Select an end date by clicking the calendar icon and choosing a date.

In the Person Relationships section, add a person relationship.

Add an existing person by entering the last name in the Add a Person field and clicking Go. To create a relationship with a person who does not exist in the database yet, enter the required information directly into the fields. Click Update to add the relationship and the person to the database.

The following table describes fields in the Person Relationship section of Create Organization.

Field	Description
Add a Person	If you are going to add a person relationship, enter the full or partial name and click the Go button.
Erase	To erase a relationship from the summary table, click the erase icon.
Title	Select a title from the drop down list.
First Name	Enter the first name.
Last Name	Enter the last name.
Relationship	Select a relationship from the drop down list.
Phone book	Select a phone number from the list of phone numbers by clicking the phone book icon.
Email Address book	Select an email address by clicking the email address book icon.
Job Title	Enter a job title.
Decision Maker	Select the decision maker check box if the person is a decision maker.

The following table describes Organization Relationship fields in Create Organization.

Field	Description
Add an Organization	If you are going to add an organization relationship, enter the full or partial name and click Go .
Erase	To erase a relationship from the summary table, click the erase icon.
Relationship	Select a relationship from the drop down list.
Related Organization	This field holds the name of the related organization.
Start Date	Select a start date by clicking the calendar icon and choosing a date.
End Date	Select an end date by clicking the calendar icon and choosing a date.

- After you have completed entering the information, scroll to the bottom of the page, click **Create**.

You have successfully created an organization when the Organization Detail Main page opens. The organization number is generated by the system.

Maintaining Organization Detail

Prerequisites

An existing Organization

Steps

- Navigate to Audience > Organization.
- Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
- Add or update information.

The following table describes the Organization Detail fields.

Field	Description
Organization	The organization name is a required field.

Field	Description
Organization Name Pronunciation	You can enter the organization name pronunciation.
SIC Code Version	Select the Standard Industry Code Version from the drop down list.
DUNS Number	Dunn and Bradstreet Number is pre-populated.
Tax Code/ID	Enter the tax code.
Email Address book	Enter the email address here or click the email address book to select another address.
Customer Category	Select customer category from the drop down list.
Annual Revenue	Select the currency from the drop down list. Enter the annual company revenue into the next field.
Fiscal Year End	Select the fiscal year end from the drop down list.
Last Order Date	Edit the last order date by typing the date (day-month-XXXXyear)
Web Site Address Book	Click the link to view the organization's web site. Click the icon to add or edit web site addresses.
External/Internal	By default External is selected. Use Internal only if you are creating your organization. If you want to create relationships between your organization and other external organizations
Number	View the number assigned to the organization.
Alias	Enter an organization alias.
SIC Code	Select an SIC code by entering a partial code and clicking Go . Select from the search results which are a subset of the SIC code version.
External System Number	Click the External System Number link to view details.
Phone book	Click the phone book link to select another party phone number to display.
Business Line	Enter a business line, if applicable.
Total Employees	Enter the total number of employees.
Year Established	Enter the year the organization was established.
Lifetime Value	Edit the lifetime value, if applicable.
Status	Select a status from the drop down list.

4. The address section contains fields for:
 - Identifying Address: Main address used to identify the organization
 - Address History: Address history of the organization
 - Map It: Map the address by clicking the icon
 - Phone book: Change the phone number by clicking the phone icon and selecting the correct phone number, click OK
 - Start Date: Select the start date by clicking the calendar icon and selecting a date from the calendar
 - End Date: Select the end date by clicking the calendar icon and selecting a date from the calendar
 - Status: Displays the status indicated in the details
 - Type: Displays the address type indicated in the details
5. To select an existing address, enter a full or partial address in the Select an Existing Address field and click Go or create an address by clicking Create Address:
 - a. Select an Address Style from the drop down list; this is a required field.
 - b. Enter the address into Address Lines 1-4.
 - c. Enter the city.
 - d. Select the state and province from the drop down list.
 - e. Enter the postal code.
 - f. Select the country from the drop down list.
 - g. Select an end date by clicking the calendar icon.
 - h. Select a status from the drop down list.
 - i. Optionally, enter the county.
 - j. Select a start date by clicking the calendar icon, if you do not enter a date, the default is the current date.
 - k. Optionally, enter a pronunciation.
 - l. In the Address Types section, select Address Type from the drop down list.
 - m. Select the Primary check box to make the address the primary address.
 - n. Select a Status from the drop down list.

- o. Click **Create**. The Organization Detail page opens.
6. Click **Update**.

Searching for an Organization

Use the following procedure to search for a previously created organization.

Prerequisites

An existing organization

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. To search using **Quick Find**:
 - a. Choose Organization from the drop down list.
 - b. Enter the partial name of the organization for which you are searching.
 - c. Click **Go**.
3. To search using **Advanced Search**:
 - a. Click the **Advanced Search** link. The Organization Search page displays.
 - b. Select search filters and display options.
 - c. If you want to save the search, enter a Search Name,.
 - d. Click Search or to save the search parameters for future use, click **Save and Apply Search**.

Creating and Maintaining Organization Relationships

Organizations may have two types of relationships: Organization to Organization and Organization to Person. Use Organization to Organization relationships to create parent and subsidiary, headquarters and division, partner, and competitor relationships. Use Organization to Person relationships to create business contact relationships.

The Relationships link displays the Relationships summary page. From the summary page, table you may view existing Organization to Organization and Organization to Person relationships, multiple relationship addresses, phone number, start and end dates, and relationship status.

Creating an Organization to Organization Relationship

Prerequisites

Both organizations must exist.

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Relationships link.
4. In the Add an Organization field, enter the name, or partial name and Click Go. The Search Results page opens with the name and all addresses of the organization. Addresses are read-only.
5. From the Search Results page, click the organization link to select the organization for which you want to create a relationship. The Organization Detail Main page opens and the Related Organization field, a required field, is populated.
6. Select a Relationship Type from the drop down list.
7. Optionally, enter a start and/or end date. If a start date is not entered, the field will default to the current date upon **Update**.
8. Click **Update**.
9. After saving the relationship, the Relationship field in the table will become a link and you can view the Relationship Detail page by clicking the link. Additionally, the Related Organization will become a link and you can view the related organization's detail by clicking the link.
10. From the Organization to Organization Relationship Detail page you can change the relationship type, start and end dates, select a relationship address, add Notes, Tasks, Interactions, and Attachments.

Notes

The address of the relationship must be an address of the related organization.

Creating an Organization to Person Relationship

Prerequisites

The existence of the Organization and Person

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Relationships link.
4. In the Add a Person field, enter the name, or partial name and click Go.
5. Choose from the list of people or, if the person is not yet in the database, they may be added by entering the new information directly into the Person to Organization Relationship table.
6. Select a Relationship Type from the drop down list.
7. Optionally, enter a phone number, email address, job titles, or send collateral.
8. Click **Update**.
9. After saving the relationship, the Relationship field in the table will become a link. Click the link to display the Relationship Detail. Edit the relationship type, start and end dates, addresses, and add other details such as mail stop, roles, manager information, and job title as desired. Additionally, you can add Notes, Tasks, Interactions, and Attachments to the Relationship Detail.

Note

The address of the relationship must be an address of the related organization.

Creating and Maintaining Organization Opportunities

Creating and maintaining an opportunity, within the context of a specific organization.

Prerequisites

An existing Organization

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Opportunities link to display a summary of all opportunities for the specific organization.
4. The summary may be customized by clicking Personalize and selecting the columns to be displayed. Click Save to return to the summary page.
5. Click **Create** to create a new opportunity. The organization name will default to the name of the selected organization.
6. Enter the customer address and opportunity name. Additionally, enter any other information.
7. Click **Create**. The Opportunity Detail page displays.
8. Optionally, enter additional information on the Opportunity Detail page or click the link to return to the organization detail. The created opportunity displays in the opportunity summary table.

Notes

In order to better support and service your customers, you can enter comments into a free form text field that you can archive and share with others in your organization. The Notes link represents a log of information that is stored about a particular organization.

- Create a Note
- View a Note

Creating a Note

Complete the following procedure to create an organizational note.

Prerequisites

An existing organization

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.

2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Notes link.
4. Select a Type from the drop down list.
5. Optionally, select the box labeled Private to prevent sales team members from viewing this note.
6. Enter a note in the text box.
7. Click **Create**.

Notes

You cannot edit notes once they are created.

Viewing an Organization Note

Use this procedure to view an organization note.

Prerequisites

An existing organization with a note.

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Notes link.
4. Select a Type from the drop down list. The default type can be changed using Profiles.
5. Enter the number of days of note history to view.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. To view the full text of the note, click the icon in the Text column in the Notes History table.
8. To view All Notes in a printable version, click **All Notes**.

Notes

Your profile set up determines the number of rows to display in the notes table.

If there are more records than you have chosen to display, click **Next** at the bottom of the table to view additional notes.

Sales Teams

Sales teams represent all of the salespeople and partners with ownership of a specific customer or opportunity. Sales team members may have full access or read only access.

Adding a Team Member

Use this procedure to add a team member to an organization.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Sales Team link.
4. Enter the last name or partial name of the sales representative in the Add a Salesperson field.
5. To locate a salesperson outside of your Business Unit, choose the Business Unit from the drop down list, click **Go**.
6. Choose from the company menu, click **Go**.
7. Click the salesperson link.
8. Click **Update**.
9. To associate this salesperson with a customer location for the purposes of territory assignment, enter the location or partial location and click **Go**.

Adding a Partner

Use the following procedure to add a partner to an organization.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Sales Team link.
4. Enter the last name of the Partner in the "Add a Partner" field, click Go.
5. Select a partner from the search results list.
6. Click **Update**. Only those organizations specifically defined as a "sales" partner may be selected.

Removing a Team Member

Use the following procedure to remove a team member.

Prerequisites

The sales team member must be on the sales team.

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Sales Team link.
4. Locate the salesperson that you want to remove on the summary table.
5. Select the Remove check box.
6. Click **Update**.

Organization Interactions

Interactions are customer touch-points that you can view from the Customer tab. You can view interactions entered by sales, marketing, and service department representatives.

Prerequisites

Existing interactions

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Interactions link.
4. Select search filters.
5. Click **Apply**.

Note

Users do not create interactions. Interactions are recorded automatically by various applications within the Oracle CRM suite.

Person Subtab

Within the Audience tab you will find the Person subtab. From this page, you can maintain information displayed on the summary page, change your summary page, or send collateral.

See:

- [Personalizing Person Summary](#)
- [Updating the Person Summary Table](#)
- [Sending Collateral from the Person Summary Table](#)

You can perform the following tasks from the Audience > Person subtab:

- Personalize person summary
- Create, maintain, search for people

- Create and maintain relationships
- Create and maintain opportunities
- Create and maintain notes
- Create and maintain sales teams
- Create and maintain tasks
- View interactions
- Create and maintain attachments
- Send collateral
- 360 degree view
- Create and maintain leads
- Create and maintain accounts
- Create and maintain classification

Personalizing Person Summary

Use the Personalize button to define a personal list of People or Person Relationships. The default view is "My Person Relationships" which displays the details for people who have existing relationships.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Person.
2. Click **Personalize**.
3. Either choose an existing search by selecting it from the drop down list and click Go or select the Display Relationship Information or Display Person radio buttons. By selecting Display Relationship Information, the search results will show people who have relationships with organizations and people. By selecting Display Person Information, the search results will only show people for which you are on the sales team, without any relationship details.
4. To view people for which relationships do not exist, for example, an independent consumer who is not a contact for an organization, adjust the search criteria by selecting the Display Person Information radio button.

5. Enter search criteria in Person, Address, Sales Team, Relationship sections, if desired.
6. Enter a Search Name.
7. Select the Use as Summary Page Default check box.
8. Click **Save**, or **Save and Apply Search**. If you want to search without saving the search, click Search. Saved Searches appear in a drop down list on the Person page.

Note

The Advanced Search link and Personalize button take you to the same People Search page.

Updating the Person Summary Table

Depending on the fields selected to display on your summary table, some fields may be updateable.

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Person.
2. To edit the phone number, select the phone book icon and enter a phone number.
3. To edit the email address, select the email address book icon and enter an email address.
4. To indicate that this person should no receive mail, select the Do Not Mail check box.
5. To indicate that this person should receive collateral, select the Collateral Recipient check box.
6. Click **Update**.

Sending Collateral from the Person Summary Table

1. Navigate to Audience > Person.
2. Select the individual's Collateral Recipient check box or use the Select All button to select all in the summary table.
3. Click Send Collateral.

Creating a Person

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Click **Create**.
2. In the Create Person section, enter information such as:

Field	Description
Last Name	Enter the last name.
First Name	Enter the first name.
Preferred Name	Enter a preferred name, if applicable.
Title	Select a title from the drop down list.
Suffix	Enter a suffix, if applicable.
Gender	Select a gender from the drop down list.
Status	Select a status from the drop down list.

3. In the Business Information section, you can enter information such as:

Field	Description
Relationship	Select a relationship from the drop down list.
Address	Enter a business address.
Manager	Find the manager by entering the full or partial name and clicking Go .
Department	Enter the department, if applicable.
Job Title	Enter a job title.
Role	Select a role from the drop down list.
Business Phone Book	Select a phone number from the party list by clicking the phone book icon.
Start Date	Select a date by clicking the calendar icon.

Field	Description
Decision Maker	Select the check box to indicate that the person is a decision maker.
Reference	Select the check box to indicate the person can be considered a reference.
Do Not Mail	Select the check box to indicate that no mail is to be sent.

4. In the Personal Information section, you can enter information such as:
 - Personal Phone Book: Select a phone number by clicking the phone book icon.
 - Address Type: Select from the list of values.
 - Address Lines 1-4: Enter information into the address fields.
 - County: Enter information into the field.
 - Start Date: Select by clicking the calendar icon and choosing a date.
 - Do Not Mail: Select the check box to indicate "do not mail".
5. In the Notes sections, you can enter notes associated with this person.
 1. Select the note type from the drop down list.
 2. Enter text in the Text box.
 3. Click Create.

Searching for a Person

Prerequisites

An existing Person

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Person.
2. To search using **Quick Find**:
 - a. Choose Person from the drop down list.
 - b. Enter the partial name of the Person for which you are searching.
 - c. Click **Go**.

3. To search using **Advanced Search**:
 - a. Click the **Advanced Search** link. The Person Search page displays.
 - b. Select search filters and display options.
 - c. To save the search, enter a Search Name,.
 - d. Click Search or to save the search parameters for future use, click **Save and Apply Search**.

Tasks (Person)

Tasks provide a way of tracking current and future customer or opportunity activities by providing a list of action items for a specific date range, as well as maintaining a history of activities. Tasks may be created for yourself, or assigned to others in your organization. Tasks may be associated with specific organizations.

Creating a Task

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Tasks link.
4. Click **Create**.
5. Select Task Type from the drop down list.
6. If the task is a private task, select the Private box. This task can only be assigned to you.
7. Enter the Task Name.
8. Enter the Task Description.
9. Choose the Priority from the drop down list.
10. Select the Status from the drop down list.

11. Select a planned start date by clicking the calendar icon and selecting a date.
12. Optionally, select a planned start time and end time by selecting from the drop down lists.
13. Enter the name of the task owner and click **Go**.
14. Select a task owner by clicking the link from the list of search results.
15. Optionally, you can relate the task to an opportunity, organization, person or relationship, click **Go**. The default relationship is organization.
16. Click **Create**. When the Task Detail page displays, the Task is created. Additional information or an attachment may be added from this page.

Attachments

Attachments are defined as physical documents, URLs, or text. The typical use of attachments is for sharing and storing information about an organization. For example, you can attach a press release about the organization.

Adding an Attachment to a Task

Prerequisites

An existing Organization

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Attachments link.
4. Click **Add** to display the Add Attachment page.
5. Enter a description, click Text, File, or URL.
6. Enter Text, click Browse to search for the document, or enter the URL.
7. Click **Create**.

Viewing an Existing Attachment

Prerequisites

An existing Organization with an Attachment

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the Attachments link.
4. Click the Name link (CHECK) to display the Attachment information.

360 Degree View

The 360 degree view provides you with a way to look at the enterprise level activities of your organization. You can browse orders, invoices, returns, products, and service requests in detail by clicking the link. If the organization has several accounts, choose one from the drop down list. Additionally you can drill down into the details of each order by clicking the details link.

In order to use the 360 degree view, you must have iStore installed to view orders, Install Base to view products installed, and iSupport to view the Invoices, Returns, and Service Requests. For more information about iStore, Install Base, and iSupport please refer to the *Oracle iStore and Oracle eMerchandising Implementation Guide* and *Oracle iSupport Implementation Guide*.

Prerequisites

Implementation of iStore, Install Base and iSupport

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Organization.
2. Click the name link for the desired Organization or use Quick Find or Advanced Search to locate the desired Organization and click its link to display the Main Organization Details page.
3. Click the 360 View link to view the 360 Degree View page.
4. You can view summary pages for each of the following by clicking each link:

- Orders
- Invoices
- Returns
- Products
- Service Requests

Lists

Oracle Marketing Online provides a number of facilities for working with and managing lists of customers and prospects.

Help is available on the following tasks:

- [Viewing a List](#)
- [Creating a Standard List](#)
- [Creating a Manual List](#)
- [Creating and Modifying List Selections](#)
- [Creating and Modifying List Options](#)
- [Generating a List](#)
- [Viewing List Entries](#)
- [Adding Notes to a List](#)
- [Associating a List with a Campaign Schedule, Event Invitation List or Offer Marketing Eligibility](#)
- [Regenerating a List](#)
- [Exporting a List](#)
- [Adding Manual Entries to a List](#)
- [Viewing the List Process Log](#)

Viewing a List

Lists are shown on the Summary Page of the List subtab along with their Type, Data Source, Status, Owner, List Size, Scheduled Generation Date, Last Generation Date, the Log of list generation activities, and Entries.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Lists.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select from the following Side Panel Menu items:
 - Main
 - Selections
 - Options
 - Generation
 - Entries
 - Notes

Creating a Standard List

The process of creating a List begins with the naming of the List and selection of the Type (Standard, Manual or Suppression) and Data Source (Consumers, i.e., B2C or Organization Contact, i.e., B2B). Additional Data Source Types may be created by your system administrator. List sources are then selected and incorporated by including the source entries, excluding the source entries, or including only the entries that appear in more than source (intersection of entries). List generation is performed immediately or at any future date.

Use this functionality to create a list which may be then associated with a campaign schedule, event invitation list, or offer market eligibility.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Enter a name for the list.
4. Select a List Type of Standard.

5. Select a Data Source from Consumers (B2C) or Organization Contact Details (B2B). Additional Data Sources may be made available by your system administrator.
6. The Status of a new list is always Draft. The status may be changed later (*See List Status*).
7. Verify or change the Owner of the List.
8. Optionally, enter a Description.
9. Click **Create**.

Once the List is created, the List Type and Data Source may not be changed.

Notes

All items on this page are required, except for the Description.

Creating a Manual List

Use this procedure to create manual lists.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > List.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Select a List Type of Manual. A Manual List is constructed from manually entered information. Additional records from the organizations data source may be selected using this method. For more information, see [Adding Manual Entries to a List](#).

Modifying Main List Attributes

Once the list is created, only the Name, Status, Owner and Description may be modified.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > List.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.

Creating and Modifying List Selections

The Selections page is where record sources are selected. How each source is to be incorporated into the list is also determined. If more than one source is selected, a deduplication ranking is required.

Select the Lists, Segments and Workbooks that will serve as record sources for the List, order their incorporation, and determine each source's incorporation process: include, exclude or intersect.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > List.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Selections from the Side Panel Menu.
4. Complete the table, one row for each record source to be incorporated.
5. For each record source:
 - a. Specify the Order in which the record sources will be incorporated. The lowest numbered record source will be used first.
 - b. Select the Operation. Operations are Include, Exclude and Intersect:
 - Include means to add all entries in the record source to the List. Include is a required operations for the first record source to be used.
 - Exclude means that any entries in the record source will be removed from the List. Exclude is generally used to remove a set of entries from larger record source that was included in the List.
 - Intersect means only entries that are in the intersected record source and the List (up to that point in the incorporation order), will remain on the List. Intersect can be used to create a list where the entries are selected for more than one reason (Example: a record source of people making over \$100,000

intersected with a record source of people living in Montana will result in a List of people living in Montana who make more than \$100,000).

- c. Select the Type. Types are Import List, List Segment, SQL or Workbook:
 - Import List is a record source of a rented or purchased list.
 - List is an existing List. Selecting List is how a list may be broken down into sublists.
 - Segment is a set of criteria used to generate a list, it does not refer to actual records, but rather to the criteria used to select records.
 - SQL is a Structured Query Language statement. Using an SQL statement is another method for storing the criteria used to select records.
 - Workbook is a spreadsheet containing records selected through the use of Oracle Discoverer. A Workbook contains one or more Worksheets.
 - d. Click Go at the end of the Name field to select from available objects of the Type just selected.
 - e. Enter a Deduplication Rank for each record source. This is required if there are more than one Include Operation. A Deduplication Rank determines which record to retain when a user removes duplicate records after the List has been generated. Deduplication occurs only during an Include Options.
 - f. Enter a percentage of records that should be selected from the record source. This field accepts only positive integers from 1 to 100.
6. Click Update. The record sources will be incorporated and the Available Records, Requested Records and Selected Records columns will be updated. The Record Count Subtotal, Manual Additions and Record Count Total will also be updated.

Creating and Modifying List Options

Options are used for selecting less than the entire record source.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.

3. Select Options from the Side Panel Menu.
4. From the Selection Method choose:
 - Top Down: The percentage of records requested will be selected starting at the top of the list.
 - Every Nth Row: The percentage of records requested will be selected by choosing every nth record until the correct number is selected.
 - Random Percent of Rows: The percentage of records requested will be selected randomly from the available records.
5. Enter a Minimum number of records to select and a Maximum number of records to select.
6. Select Remove Duplications Using Rule if desired. Click Go to select a Deduplication Rule. These rules are set up by your system administrator.
7. Select Use Word Standardization if desired. Using Word Standardization will not change any text in your entries, but will convert words on a temporary basis for the purposes of comparison only. The Word Standardization Rules are set up by your system administrator.

Notes

The Selection Method option will be applied before the Record Count criteria. However, if the Record Count Minimum is not met or the Record Count Maximum is exceeded, the Record Count criteria will prevail.

Selecting Remove Duplications Using Rule will not actually remove duplicates from the List, but flag them as duplicates and disable those records in the List Entries.

Generating a List

Use this procedure to specify an immediate list generation or the generation of a list at a future date and time.

Note: When a list is imported and generated at the same time, the system does not support Order By and Group functionality during the list generation.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Generation from the Side Panel Menu.
4. If immediate Generation is desired, select Generate immediately and click Update.
5. If future Generation is desired, select Generate at a future time and enter the date, time, and time zone in the future when the list should be generated. This may be changed to set the generation earlier or later.

Viewing List Entries

Use the following procedures to displays entries on a generated List.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Entries from the Side Panel Menu.
4. The following columns will be displayed. Click a column heading link to sort the list on the column.
 - a. PIN #
 - b. First Name
 - c. Last Name
 - d. Customer Name
 - e. Email
 - f. Phone
 - g. Address
 - h. City
 - i. Zip

- j. **Dupe.** Indicates that duplicates will automatically be removed.
- k. **Enabled.** This column is checked by default, except for duplicate records. To remove an entry from the List manually, deselect the Enabled column for that entry.
- l. **Manually Entered**

Adding Notes to a List

Adding Notes to a list can provide some historical perspective on why a list was created and generated as well as which marketing object is may be attached to. Use the following procedures to add a note to a list.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Notes from the Side Panel Menu.

Associating Lists

Lists may be associated with Campaign Schedules, Event Invitation Lists and Offer Market Eligibility in order to limit or restrict those objects to the customers or prospects on the List.

Regenerating a List

Use this procedure to regenerate a list.

Prerequisites

An existing list

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Generation from the Side Panel Menu.

4. If immediate Generation is desired, select Generate immediately and click Update.
5. If future Generation is desired, select Generate at a future time and enter the date, time, and time zone in the future when the list should be generated. This may be changed to set the generation earlier or later.

Notes

- When a List is regenerated it may contain more or less entries than the previous generation as records meeting the List's criteria may have been added or removed in the interim.
- Manual changes (additions, enabling, disabling) will be lost if the List is regenerated.

Exporting a List

Exporting a list generates a CSV file which can be opened with spreadsheet applications such as Microsoft Excel or Quatro Pro and converted for use as a data source for Microsoft Word and other software.

Prerequisites

An existing list

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > List.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Entries from the Side Panel Menu.
4. Click the download icon to the right of the Add To List button.
5. On the dialog box that displays, click Save File. Select an appropriate location and click Save.
6. To convert the CSV file:
 - a. Click Open. Change to the directory where the CSV file was saved. Change Files of Type to All Files (*.*). Select the CSV File and click Open.
 - b. To save the file, click **File** and select Save As, and change the file type.

Adding Manual Entries to a List

Standard Lists may be augmented by manually entering records. Use this procedure to create or add manual lists.

Prerequisites

An existing list

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the List Name link in the Name column to display the List Detail page.
3. Select Entries from the Side Panel Menu.
4. Click Add to List to display the Person Search page.
5. Enter the appropriate information and click Update to save each new record.

Notes

To add an entry, the Person or Organization must already exist. To Add a Person or Organization, click the Person or Organization subtab from the Audience tab.

Viewing the List Process Log

The List Process Log details the steps taken by both the user and the system in creating the list.

Prerequisites

An existing list

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > List**.
2. Click the icon in the Log column for the desired list to view the log details.

Notes

The List Process Log is generally for the use of your system administrator. If there is a problem generating the list, the List Process Log may assist you or your system administrator in determining the cause of the problem.

Segments

A Segment is a saved set of criteria that can be used to generate a List or define a population of customers or prospects. The major difference between a List and a Segment is that a Segment will be dynamic while a list is static.

Viewing and Editing a Segment

Segments are shown on the Summary Page of the Segment subtab along with their Parent Segment, Code, Creation Date, Owner, Status, Size and Hierarchy. With a segment, you can display and view the detail information for the selected Segment.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > Segments**.
2. Click the Name in the Segment Name column to display the Segment Details Page.
3. The Details Page shows the Segment Name, Code, Parent Segment, Status, Type and Source, the SQL statement, the Owner and Description.

Creating a Segment

Segments are created from either an Oracle Discoverer Workbook or an SQL statement.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Segment.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Enter a Segment Name.
4. Enter a Segment Code.
5. If the Segment is based on a Parent Segment, select the Parent Segment.
6. Status is defaulted to Draft.

7. Select the Type. If the Type is Workbook, click Go to select a Workbook. If the Type is SQL, then enter a SQL statement in the SQL field.
8. Optionally, enter a Description.
9. Click **Create**.

Notes

Segments are different from lists. Segments are criteria used to produce a list, not the actual entries in a list.

Import Lists

List Imports are shown on the Summary Page with their Type, Status, ID, Creator, Import Date, Number of Records and Log.

Note: When a list is imported and generated at the same time, the system does not support Order By and Group functionality during the list generation.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > Import**.
2. Click the List Import Name to display the List Import Details page.
3. Click the Log icon to display the log for the List Import.
4. Click **Finish** to return to the List Import Summary Page.

Importing List Entries

Clicking the Create button in Import launches the Import Wizard. The Wizard walks the user through importing a rented or purchased list or a user created list.

Prerequisites

A flat data file, such as CSV file, either on your desktop or a server in the directory specified by your system administrator.

Steps

1. Click **Create** to start the Import Wizard.
2. Complete the Import Definition:
 - a. Select Organizations, Persons, Addresses
 - b. Enter a Name for the Import.
 - c. Enter a Description.
 - d. Select the location for the source file. Choose Server if the source file is located on the server. It must be located in the directory specified by your system administrator. Choose Client if the source file is located on your computer. Click go to browse for the location of the Data Source.
 - e. Select the Column Delimiter. For a CSV file, select comma.
 - f. Select the Field Enclosed By. For a CSV file, select double quotation.
 - g. Select the File Header Exists checkbox if the file has a header. Make sure that the first line of your file has the column headings (field names).
 - h. Select a Deduplication Rule if desired.
 - i. If a Deduplication Rule is selected, select the Word Standardization checkbox if Word Standardization should be used for comparison in the deduplication process.
 - j. Click Next to continue.
3. Complete the More Details Page:
 - a. Select whether you are importing Organizations (B2B) or Consumers (B2C).
 - b. Select whether the import is a Purchased List or Rented List, or Other. Optionally, enter the Vendor, Cost, Expiration Date and the Number of Uses.
 - c. Click Next to save and continue.
4. Import List Header Mapping. Complete this section by:
 - a. Selecting an existing Mapping. This is useful if the source file is to be used repeatedly or if lists are regularly purchased or rented from a particular vendor.
 - b. Enter a name in the Save New Mapping field to create a reusable mapping.

- c. The column headings from the imported source file will be displayed in the left column. The available fields from the destination table are displayed in the middle column. Select an item from the left column and an item from the middle column and click the right (>) button to move the field mapping to the right column. Highlight an item in the right column and click the left (<) button to remove a mapping. Continue until all desired fields are mapped.
 - d. Click Next to save and move to the next page. If a name for the new mapping was supplied, the new mapping will be saved.
5. Review the information supplied. Select the Generate a List Upon Import checkbox to automatically generate a List. Click Import.
 6. A confirmation page will be displayed. Click Finish to return to the Import Summary Page where the import results may be viewed or click New Import to import another Data Source.

Searching for a Person or Organization

Search can be used for locate a person or an organization on all available lists.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Audience > Search**.
2. Select Choose List Source. List Sources are either Consumers (B2C) or Organization Contacts (B2B).
3. Select Search All Lists or only Lists Created Between and supply the dates to limit the Search.
4. Click **Search** to begin the searching process.
5. Any lists in which the name appear will be displayed at the bottom of the page along with List Name, Consumer Name, Status, Generated Rows, Last Generation Date and Type.

Partner Subtab

The Partner subtab is used to review, enter and edit information regarding marketing partners.

Use this procedure to create a partner.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Log in as Vendor User, Channel Manager, or System Administrator.
2. Navigate to **Partner > Partner Summary**.
3. Click **Create**.
4. Fill in details for the organization: organization name, alias (also known as), phone number, email address.
5. Supply other known information, including annual revenue, customer category, fiscal year end, total employees, year established, tax ID, DUNS number and web site.
6. For the Partner Details section, indicate the Relationship (Partner or VAD), start and end dates if they are known, Partner level, purchase method, target revenue, who the preferred VAD is, and revenue year-to-date.
7. Indicate the Channel Manager and secondary phone support person, and the original system reference.
8. Indicate in the checkboxes whether to enable the Partner for Opportunity Exchange and for Automatic Matching.
9. Add a person by filling in the Person Relationships if known: title, name, relationship, phone, email, job title, and note whether this person is a decision-maker.
10. Add an Organization Relationship by indicating the organization name, relationship, related organization, active or inactive, start and end dates.
11. Click **Create** when finished.

Creating a Partner Relationship for an Existing Organization

Follow the steps below to create a Partner Relationship from the Partner tab.

Steps

1. Log in as Vendor User, Channel Manager, or System Administrator.
2. Navigate to **Partner > Partner Summary**

3. Click **Create**.
4. Search for an existing organization by typing the name of the organization in the Find Partner field, (which is located below the Create & Restore buttons) and then click the Go button.
5. When the organization is selected, the user is automatically taken to the organization detail's page.
6. Select Relationship details.
7. In the organization to organization section, partially enter the Vendor organization's name, (optional).
8. Click on the Go button.
9. Select the internal organization as the related organization in the organization-to-organization relationship.
10. Select relationship type Partner of or Relationship of.
11. Click Update.
12. Drill down into the Relationship type.
13. Enter Partner details.
14. Click **Update**.

Follow the steps below to create the reciprocal relationship on the Vendor organization's details.

15. Click the Back button in the browser until the Partner Relationship Detail window reappears.
16. Click on the Internal organization's name.
17. Select the new Partner as the Related organization.
18. Repeat steps 1-10 above, that were used to create the relationship from the Partner side.

Viewing/Modifying Partner Profile Details

Follow the steps below to complete the Partner Profile Detail page.

Steps

1. Log in as Vendor User, Channel Manager, or System Administrator.

2. From the Partner tab, navigate to the row of the Partner organization you wish to view and click on the Partner organization's Relationship type, (Partner or VAD).
3. View and/or modify Partner Profile Details on this page.
4. Fill in Relationship and Partner descriptions: Partner level, purchase method, target revenue, preferred VAD, revenue year to date.
5. Identify Channel Manager and secondary phone support person.
6. Click checkboxes to enable for Opportunity Exchange and Automatic Matching, if appropriate.
7. Click **Update**.

Creating/Viewing Partner Contacts

Use this window to perform the following tasks:

- View partner contact details
- Access the window for creating a partner contact
- Identify those who should receive collateral

For information on how to use the search capabilities, go to Quick Find.

Steps

1. Log in as Vendor User, Channel Manager, or System Administrator.
2. Navigate to Partner > Contact Summary > Contact Detail > Relationship Contacts of Partner organizations.
3. Select Saved searches for All Partners, Sales Partners and Exchange Partners. Click on the Search button.
4. View identifying information: Partner organization, role, address, phone number and email.
5. To find more detailed information about a specific Partner contact or to update the information, drill down on the contact's name.
6. From the Partner Contact summary screen, click Create to create a new Partner Contact.
7. Enter Partner Contact information.

Required fields of information include only the organization name, with whom the Partner Contact is associated, and the contact's full name. Other identifying fields are phone, email, job title and more.

8. Click **Create**.

Creating Partner Contact Details

In this window create and maintain information about partner contacts. You must create a user registration for a Partner Contact who needs access to the Oracle Marketing Online system.

1. Log in as the Vendor User, Channel Manager, or System Administrator.
2. Navigate to **Customer > Contact Summary > Relationship** type of a particular contact.
3. Click on the Relationship type "employee of" a Partner contact's name in the summary table of Partner Contacts.
4. In the Relationships type details page, fill in appropriate information: names, title, relationship, role, manager, start and end dates, contact information.
5. In the User Registration section: select the desired user responsibility from the list of values.
6. Create a password for the user.
7. Verify the password by retyping it in the indicated field.
8. Click **Update**.

Note:

Vendors maintain this information for contacts so that they can login into the Partners Online application through an extranet.

Viewing Partner Contact Relationship Details

If you are a Partner Contact, use this window to view the Person to Organization Relationships of a particular Partner Contact that works for your company.

Login as a Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Person > Person Details-Relationships

Viewing Partner Contact Notes Details

Use this window to review notes about Partner Contact organizations and transactions regarding them. Sort them by type or view the entire note history.

Log in as a Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Person > Person Details-Notes

Viewing Partner Contacts Summary

Use this window to review a summary list of Partner contacts. Click links to see more detail about specific sales representatives. Only the main business-related details are supplied.

Log in as Partner and navigate to **My Company > Person > Person Details-Main**.

Viewing Partner/Customer Interaction Detail

Use this window to review details of Partner/Customer interactions. Click links to see more detail about specific organizations, sales representatives, and interactions.

Log in as a Partner and navigate to **My Company > Organization > Organizations Details-Interactions**.

Viewing Main Details

Use this page to see details of your company, if you work for a Partner organization: annual revenue, total employees, business category, addresses and other identifying information.

Log in as a Partner User and navigate to **My Company > Organization > Organizations Details-Main**.

To view more specific details about an organization or person, click the appropriate link.

Viewing Organization Relationship Detail

Use this page to see the overall relationship details of the Partner's organization and contacts:

Organization to Organization Relationships

Log in as Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Organization > Organization Detail > Relationships

The Partner's view of his own company's details is similar to the regular organization details pages.

.Viewing Contacts

Use this window to view profiles of Partner contacts. Click links to see more detail about specific sales representatives. Only the main business-related details are supplied.

Log in as Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Person > Specific Person > Person Detail-Main

Viewing Contact Relationship Details

Use this window to view relationship details of Partner contacts. Click links to see more detail about specific organizations and about person-to-person relationships. In the Relationship type details, only the main business-related details are supplied, including start and end dates and first time user registration information. User registration login and password fields are up-to-date.

1. In the Create Partner Contact page.
2. In the Personal profile page (profile icon at top of every page above tabs).
3. In the user's record in Resource Manager by a System Administrator.

Log in as Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Person > Relationships

Viewing Organization Notes

Use this window to review notes about Partner organizations and transactions regarding them. Sort them by type or view the entire note history.

Log in as a Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Organization > Organization Detail-Notes

Steps

1. Select the type of notes you wish to view from the list of values.
2. To display and review all notes, click All Notes.
3. To track notes for a period of time, in the Note History section select the type of note and indicate the date range.

4. Click **Apply**.

My Company > Person > Organizations Details-Interactions

The Partner's users view of his own company's details is similar to the information provided in the regular organization details page.

Steps

1. Select the type of notes you wish to view from the list of values.
2. To display and review all notes, click All Notes.
3. To track notes for a period of time, in the Note History section select the type of note and indicate the date range.
4. Click Apply.

Viewing Sales Team Details

Use this window to review details of the your campaigns sales team: sales group, territory, job title, role, email and phone number. Click links to see more specific detail about the sales representatives.

Log in as Partner and navigate to the following:

My Company > Organization > Organization Detail-Sales Team

My Company> Person

The Campaign Tab

Campaigns are the vehicle for putting information about the organization's products, services, offers, and messages in front of customers and potential customers. The Campaign tab is comprised of three subtabs:

- Campaigns
- Programs
- Offers

The Campaigns subtab is where campaigns are created along with their respective schedules and triggers, partners, products, messages, geography, offers, metrics, teams, notes, attachments, and so on. These objects are used to define and limit the campaign as well as record the results of the campaign.

The Programs subtab is where multiple components: Campaigns, Collections, Deals, Trade Promotions, other Programs, Events, and One-Off Events may be combined into a complete package.

The Offers subtab is where offers are created prior to being associated with other marketing objects such as Campaigns, Deals, Trade Promotions, Events, and so on.

Help is available on the following topics:

- [Viewing and Editing a Campaign](#)
- [Creating a Campaign](#)
- [Approvals for Theme and Budget](#)
- [Entering Campaign Details](#)
- [Message](#)
- [Geography](#)
- [Products](#)
- [Deliverables](#)
- [Viewing Campaign Costs and Revenues](#)
- [Budget](#)
- [Campaign Schedules](#)
- [Offers](#)
- [Triggers](#)
- [Metrics](#)
- [Copying a Campaign](#)

The Campaign Details Page

The Campaign Details page displays the basic information about a campaign along with a Side Panel Menu with items for Planning, Execution, Tracking and Collaboration. Each of these items have related sub items under them. The Summary Page may be customized, see [Personalizing Summary Pages](#).

Help is available on the following topics:

- [Viewing and Editing a Campaign](#)
- [Creating a Campaign](#)

- [Approvals for Theme and Budget](#)
- [Entering Campaign Details](#)

Viewing and Editing a Campaign

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to view or edit. The Campaign Details Page displays.
4. The fields on the Campaign Details Page are:

Field	Information
Name	Your organization may have a campaign naming convention.
Program	A campaign may be associated with a Program from the Campaign Details page.
Campaign Status	
Campaign Type	This is not an editable field, as many of the basic campaign fields are related to the Campaign Type.
Source Code	System generated
Business Unit	Select for a list of business units of the organization.
Version	A method for tracking version of a campaign
Purpose	Select from a list of purposes which may be useful in further categorizing campaigns.
Start and End Period	These are accounting periods during which the Campaign may be available for use.

Field	Information
Currency	This is the default currency for monetary aspects of the Campaign.
Priority	Select from a list of priorities.
Owner	The creator of the Campaign is the default owner. Click Go to select a different person as the Campaign's owner.
Global	Check this box if the Campaign is to extend beyond the displayed Country.
Language	Select a language for the Campaign.
Template	Check the Template box if this Campaign is used as a template for creating new Campaigns.
Description	Adding a Description helps fill in the details not immediately viewable on this page.

Note

Most of the items on this screen are editable, but some are not due to relationships between those items and the items on other pages and components of a Campaign.

Creating a Campaign

Prerequisites

Custom Setups, Marketing Mediums and Campaign Activities must have been created.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
 To create a campaign that is similar to an existing campaign, you can copy the existing one and modify it rather than creating a new one. See Copying a Campaign.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Select a Setup Type by clicking Go at the end of the Field. The Setup Type refers to Custom Setups created by the system administrator in the Administration Tab. After selecting a Setup Type, the page will redisplay. There may be additional fields displayed as well as fields that are removed from view.

4. Give the Campaign a Name. Your organization may have a campaign naming convention.
5. If this Campaign is to be part of an existing Program, click Go at the end of the Program field and select a Program to associate the Campaign with.
6. Source Code. This is best left blank for the system to complete. This results in Campaigns with consistently formatted Source Codes.
7. Business Unit. Select for a list of business units of the organization.
8. Version. A method for tracking version of a campaign.
9. Purpose. Select from a list of purposes which may be useful in further categorizing campaigns.
10. Start and End Periods. These are accounting periods during which the Campaign may be available for use.
11. Start and End Dates. These are the dates during which the Campaign may be available for use.
12. Currency. This is the default currency for monetary aspects of the Campaign.
13. Priority. Select from a list of priorities.
14. Owner. The creator of the Campaign is the default owner. Click Go to select a different person as the Campaign's owner.
15. Global. Check this box if the Campaign is to extend beyond the displayed Country.
16. Language. Select a language for the Campaign.
17. Template. Check the Template box if this Campaign is used as a template for creating new Campaigns.
18. Description. Adding a Description helps fill in the details not immediately viewable on this page.
19. Click **Create**. You will receive confirmation that a new campaign has been created.

Notes

Once the Campaign is created it is a good time to submit the Campaign for approval. There are two initial approvals required. One is theme approval and the other is budget approval. The budget approval is for the total budget for the Campaign. At a later time, you will seek out sources of funds for the Campaigns.

Each source will be recorded as a Budget line item in the Budget item on the Side Panel Menu. Each source from which funds are requested must approve the use of funds.

Approvals for Theme and Budget

Approvals for both Theme and overall Budget must be obtained before the campaign may be made active and available for use. All approvals in Oracle Marketing Online are gathered through the use of Oracle Workflow.

Prerequisites

A newly created campaign with a completed budget field on the Planning > General page.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns > Planning > General.
2. Change the Status from New to Planned. The Status field changes from Active to Pending Theme Approval. A theme approval notification is generated according to the Approval Rules set up in the Administration Tab. If the theme approval is denied, the Status is changed to Theme Approval Denied.
3. Once the Theme approval is received, a budget approval notification is generated according to the Approval Rules set up in the Administration Tab. If the budget approval is denied, the Status is changed to Budget Approval Denied.
4. When both theme and budget approvals have been received, the Status changes to Active and the Campaign is available.

Entering Campaign Details

There are four groups of Campaign components, not all of which will be available for use with every campaign: Planning, Execution, Tracking and Collaboration. The Campaign components are determined by the Custom Setups in the Administration Tab.

Prerequisites

An existing campaign.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search.
3. Click the link in the Name column to display the Campaign Details page.

General

The General item on the Side Panel Menu refers to the information entered when the Campaign was created. See *Viewing and Editing a Campaign* above.

Message

The Message item on the Side Panel Menu is used to associate a marketing Message to a Campaign. Marketing Messages refer to products, products families or organization vision.

Prerequisites

An existing message

Steps

1. Navigate from the Campaign to Planning > Message.
2. The Message page displays.
3. Select the following Items:
 - a. Message Type: Product, Product Family or Vision
 - b. Click **Go** at the end of the Message column to select a Message.
 - c. Click **Update**.
4. A confirmation message will be displayed.
5. To see the Message Details page for the selected Message, click the link in the Message column.

Removing a Message from a Campaign

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Message.
2. Click the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Message to be removed.
3. Click **Update**.

Geography

Geography is used to limit the availability of the Campaign. The first division of a national or global campaign is usually by geography.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Geography.
2. Select a Level from drop down menu.
3. Click Go at the end of the Name column to display a list of geographies at the selected Level.
4. Click Update.
5. A confirmation message will be displayed.
6. The Location column will display the geographic level the named Geography is contained in.

Removing a Geography from a Campaign

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with associated Geography.

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Geography.
2. Click the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Geography to be removed.
3. Click **Update**. A confirmation message is displayed.

Products

The Products subtab is used to limit a campaign to certain Products or Product Families. It may also be used to exclude certain Products or Product Families.

Prerequisites

The included or excluded product families must be entered in Oracle Inventory.

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Products.
2. Select a Product Family by clicking Go at the end of the Category field. The Description field fills in automatically.
3. If this Product Family is to be excluded, select the box in the Exclude column.
4. Select a Product by clicking Go at the end of the Product Number field. The Description field fills in automatically.
5. If this Product is to be excluded, select the box in the Exclude Column.

Removing Products or Product Families from a Campaign**Prerequisites**

An existing Campaign with associated Products or Product Families.

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Products.
2. Click the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Product or Product Family to be removed.
3. Click Update.
4. A confirmation message is displayed.

Specifying Deliverables

Specify Deliverables particular to a Campaign. Deliverables may be created directly from this page. You can use this procedure to specify either a physical or electronic deliverable.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Planning > Deliverables.
2. To select an existing deliverable:
 - a. Select a Deliverable Type.
 - b. Click Go at the end of the Name field. Only Deliverables of the Type selected are displayed. Select a Deliverable.
 - c. Indicate the Quantity of the selected Deliverable. Note: Electronic Deliverables need only a Quantity of 1.
 - d. Indicate the Need By date.
 - e. Select Fulfill On.
 - f. Click **Update**.

A Confirmation message is displayed. Note that the Quantity, Need By date and the Fulfill On selections may all be modified.

3. Click **Create** to create a new Deliverable.

See Creating Deliverables for complete information on creating a new Deliverable.

After creating the Deliverable, the Deliverable Name and Type are displayed on the Deliverables Page.

Removing Deliverables from a Campaign

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with associated Deliverables.

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Deliverables.
2. Click the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Deliverable to be removed.
3. Click **Update**. A confirmation message is displayed.

Viewing Campaign Costs and Revenues

Costs are used to record costs associated with a campaign.

Prerequisites

Cost metrics must be set up before associating them with a campaign.

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
2. To display the underlying Cost information, click the plus sign (+) on the folder just to the left of the Rollup Cost Name. New row(s) appear detailing the individual metrics or costs that comprise the Rollup Cost. The individual metrics may themselves, be Rollup Costs as well.

Entering New Costs and Revenues

Prerequisites

The Cost or Revenue Metric must exist.

Steps

1. Click Go at the end of the Name field in the Create New section of the page. Select a Cost, then enter Forecast and Actual amounts in their respective columns, if known. Select a Transaction Date and enter a Description.
2. Click **Create**. A Confirmation Message is displayed.
To see your entry in the Cost/Revenue section, click **Refresh**.

Removing a Cost or Revenues

Prerequisites

An existing cost

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
2. Display the Cost or Revenue to be removed. This may require displaying the underlying Cost or Revenue components. Click the plus sign (+) next to a Cost or Revenue to display the underlying components.
3. Click the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Cost or Revenue to be removed.
4. Click Update.
5. A confirmation message is displayed.

Campaign Budgets

Prerequisites

- An approved campaign
- The budget(s) from which funds are requested from must be approved and have a status of active. Likewise any campaigns that are tapped for funds must be approved and active.

Steps

1. Use the Type drop-down list to select the type of source for funds. Most of the time the source is a budget, but funds may also be requested from a parent campaign.
2. Use the Name list of values (LOV) to select the funding source.
3. In Request Amount, enter the amount you are requesting.
4. Click Update. When the status of a campaign or event changes from Planned to Active, Oracle Marketing Online sends a request for approval of the request to the budget owner. If the budget for the campaign comes from a campaign rather than a budget, then the person approving your request is the owner of

that campaign. While the funds are pending, the campaign status remains Submitted for Budget Approval.

5. A notification will be received at your Personal Home Page when the budget or campaign owner approves or rejects the campaign. If the budget is approved, then the status of the campaign becomes Available. If the budget is denied, then the status becomes Denied Budget Approval.
6. Complete writing this section when the budget approval process is finished. Put some general guidelines about how the budget approval process functions and/or can be made to function.

Campaign Schedules

Campaign Schedules are used with Campaigns to execute the Campaign. Schedules may be executed immediately, at a specified date and time in the future or by linking to a Trigger for execution when specified conditions are met.

For more information, see [Creating and Editing Campaign Schedules](#).

Campaign Offers

Associate one or more Offers with a Campaign.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to iMerchandising > Offers.
2. Click Go next to the Offer Name field to display a list of Offers.
3. Select the desired Offer and click Update. A confirmation is displayed and the rest of the columns of the Campaign Offers table will be filled in for you.
4. To view the details of the Offer, click the Offer Name link.
5. If a particular Offer should take precedence over the rest of the Offers associated with the Campaign, select the Primary Flag checkbox.

Notes

Offers may be created from the Offers page by clicking Create Offers. See [Creating an Offer](#) for more information.

Triggers

Triggers are used to activate a Campaign Schedule when a specified threshold or criteria is reached. For example, a Trigger may test the responses to an in-state campaign. If the level of responses reaches a certain level, a regional campaign is activated. Likewise, Triggers may be used to create campaign waves. An initial campaign may offer a particular product. A second wave campaign, triggered to execute a month after the initial campaign may offer accessories only to customers who purchased the product during the initial campaign.

Help topics are available on:

- [Viewing Triggers](#)
- [Removing a Trigger](#)
- [Creating a Trigger](#)
- [Creating Metric to Metric Conditions](#)
- [Creating Metric to Value Conditions](#)
- [Creating Metric to Workbook Conditions](#)

Viewing Triggers

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Triggers.
5. Triggers are displayed on the Campaign Details - Trigger page with:
 - a. Trigger Name.
 - b. Trigger Type: Metric to Metric, Metric to Value or Metric to Workbook.
 - c. Start and End Dates.

- d. Testing Interval (Every).
 - e. Frequency: Days, Hours, Months, Quarters, Weeks, Years, or None.
6. Click the Trigger Name link to display the Trigger Details and Conditions.

Removing a Trigger

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Trigger

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Triggers.
5. Select the checkbox in the Remove column of the appropriate Trigger.
6. Click Update.
7. The system displays a confirmation message.

Creating a Trigger

Prerequisites

An existing campaign

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Triggers.

5. Click Create.
6. Enter a Name for the Trigger.
7. Select a Type for the Trigger. Each Trigger Type has its own Condition section. The Create Trigger page will redisplay, showing the appropriate Condition section, after a Type is selected.
 - a. Metric to Metric. Compares one Metric value to another Metric value. If the comparison meets the specified condition, the Trigger executes any associated Campaign Schedule.
 - b. Metric to Value. Compares a Metric value to a manually entered value. If the comparison meets the specified condition, the Trigger executes any associated Campaign Schedule.
 - c. Metric to Workbook. Compares a Metric value to a single value generated by a Discoverer Workbook, such as the number of college educated customers. If the comparison meets the specified condition, the Trigger executes any associated Campaign Schedule.
8. Enter a Description.
9. Complete the Monitor Setup section:
 - a. Select a Time Zone for the Trigger.
 - b. Enter Start and End Dates.
 - c. Enter a Testing Interval and select from: Days, Hours, Months, Quarters, Weeks, Years, or None.
10. Complete the Trigger Condition section according the appropriate procedure:
 - a. See [Creating Metric to Metric Conditions](#).
 - b. See [Creating Metric to Value Conditions](#).
 - c. See [Creating Metric to Workbook Conditions](#).

Creating Metric to Metric Conditions

Specify the object type and source and the metric name and type for the two metrics being compared. Also used to specify the comparative operand.

Prerequisites

- Two existing Metrics associated with a Campaign, an Event or an Event Schedule.

- An existing Campaign with a new Metric.

Steps

1. For the first Metric select an Object Type:
 - a. Campaign.
 - b. Event.
 - c. Event Schedule.
2. Click Go to select an object of that Object Type.
3. Select a Metric associated with that object.
4. Select the value to be compared: Actual Value or Forecast Value.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 for the second Metric.
6. Select a comparison operand from:
 - a. Equal to (=).
 - b. Not equal to (!=).
 - c. Less than (<).
 - d. Less than or equal to (<=)
 - e. Greater than or equal to (>=)
 - f. Greater than (>).
7. Click Create to create the Trigger.

Creating Metric to Value Conditions

Specify the object type and source and the metric name and type for the Metric and the value being compared. Also used to specify the comparative operand.

Prerequisites

- A Metric associated with a Campaign, an Event or an Event Schedule
- An existing Campaign with a new Metric

Steps

1. For the Metric select an Object Type:

- a. Campaign.
 - b. Event.
 - c. Event Schedule.
2. Click Go to select an object of that Object Type.
3. Select a Metric associated with that object.
4. Select the Metric value to be compared: Actual Value or Forecast Value.
5. Enter a Value.
6. Select a comparison operand from:
 - a. Equal to (=).
 - b. Not equal to (!=).
 - c. Less than (<).
 - d. Less than or equal to (<=)
 - e. Greater than or equal to (>=)
 - f. Greater than (>).
7. Click Create to create the Trigger.

Creating Metric to Workbook Conditions

Specify the object type and source and the metric name and type for the Metric and the Workbook being compared. Also used to specify the comparative operand.

Prerequisites

A Metric associated with a Campaign, an Event or an Event Schedule.

A Discoverer Workbook generating a single value.

An existing Campaign with a new Metric.

Steps

1. For the Metric select an Object Type:
 - a. Campaign
 - b. Event
 - c. Event Schedule

2. Click Go to select an object of that Object Type.
3. Select a Metric associated with that object.
4. Select the Metric value to be compared: Actual Value or Forecast Value.
5. Click Go to the right of the Workbook Name field. Select an available Workbook from the list.
6. Select a comparison operand from:
 - a. Equal to (=).
 - b. Not equal to (!=).
 - c. Less than (<).
 - d. Less than or equal to (<=)
 - e. Greater than or equal to (>=)
 - f. Greater than (>).
7. Click Create to create the Trigger.

Metrics

Metrics are used to measure different aspects of Marketing Campaigns and Events. The most obvious Metric is the Response Metric which records the response to the Campaign as purchases are made through various channels. Metrics associated with a particular Campaign Schedule track the aspects of that Campaign Schedule's activities only.

Metrics must be created before associating them with a campaign or other object. Your system administrator will have provided many different metrics for use in measuring the success of the organization's campaigns.

See Also:

- [Viewing Metrics](#)
- [Entering New Metrics](#)
- [Removing a Metric](#)
- [Entering Values into Metrics](#)

Viewing Metrics

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with an associated Metric

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
5. Select a View Option:
 - a. Details
 - b. Input Only
 - c. Function Only
6. Rollup Metrics are displayed with a plus sign (+) next to them. To display the underlying Metrics, click the plus sign (+) on the folder just to the left of the Metric Name.
7. New row(s) appear detailing the individual metrics that comprise the Rollup Metric. These individual metrics may themselves, be Rollup Metrics as well.

Entering New Metrics

Prerequisites

- The required Metric must be set up by the system administrator.
- An existing Campaign.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)

3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
5. Click **Go** at the end of the Name field in the Create New section of the Campaign - Metrics page to display a list of available Metrics. Select a Metric from the list.
6. Enter Forecast and Actual values in their respective columns, if known. Select a Transaction Date and enter a Description.
7. Click **Create**.
The system displays a confirmation message.
8. To display your entry in the Metrics section, click **Refresh**.

Removing a Metric

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with an associated Metric.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
5. Display the Metric to be removed. This may require displaying the underlying Rollup Metric components. Click the plus sign (+) next to a Rollup Metric to display the underlying components.
6. Select the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Metric to be removed.
7. Click Update.

Entering Values into Metrics

Prerequisites

A Campaign with an associated Metric

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
5. Select Input Only from View Options.
6. The Campaign - Metrics page redisplay available Metrics. Rollup Metrics are displayed with a plus sign (+) next to them. To display the underlying Metrics, click the plus sign (+) on the folder just to the left of the Metric Name.
7. New row(s) appear detailing the individual metrics that comprise the Rollup Metric. These individual metrics may themselves, be Rollup Metrics as well.
8. Enter values in the Actual and Forecast columns of the appropriate Metric.
9. Click **Update**.

Copying a Campaign

Prerequisites

An existing campaign

Steps

1. Navigate to the Campaign tab.
2. Select the link for the campaign to be copied. The Campaign Details page appears.
3. Click **Copy**. The Copy Campaign page appears.
4. Make sure that the campaign to be copied appears in the Source Campaign field. If it does not, select it using the list of values (LOV).

5. Enter a name for the new campaign.
Do not enter a Source Code. This field is populated by the application automatically.
6. Enter the dates the new campaign is effective.
7. In the Select Attributes for Copying region, select the check boxes of the items to copy to the new campaign. Only the attributes populated with data appear on the list.
8. Click **Copy Now**. The new campaign is created.
9. Click the Campaign subtab.
10. Click the link of the new campaign
11. If required, place the campaign into the campaign hierarchy by entering a parent campaign in the Parent field.
12. Edit the details or add additional information for the new campaign.

Creating and Editing Campaign Schedules

Schedules are used with Campaigns to execute their outbound functionality. Campaigns such as telephone sales, directly mail, direct email are executed through a Campaign Schedule. Schedules may be executed immediately, executed on a predetermined future date or linked to a Trigger for execution once a certain criterion threshold is achieved. Campaign Schedules have their own Side Panel Menu which contains items determined by the Activity Type and Activity and defined in Custom Setup on the Administration tab.

Depending on the Custom Setups for Campaign Schedules, not all of the Side Panel Menu items may be shown for all Campaign Schedules. See *Creating a Campaign Schedule* for a information on all available Side Panel Menu items.

Help is available on the following topics:

- [Viewing a Campaign Schedule](#)
- [Editing a Campaign Schedule General Details](#)
- [Creating a Campaign Schedule](#)
- [Creating a schedule for a telemarketing campaign utilizing Oracle Advanced Outbound](#)

Viewing a Campaign Schedule

Prerequisites

An existing schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedule.
2. The Campaign Schedule table displays the schedules that have been created for this Campaign.
3. Click the link in the Name column to display the details for that Campaign Schedule.

Editing a Campaign Schedule General Details

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign Schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedule.
2. Click the link in the Name column to display the details for that Campaign Schedule.
3. The Campaign Details are displayed at the top of the page.
4. The Schedule Details displays the following fields:
 - a. Name.
 - b. Status. Do not change the Status to Active until all of the components required to execute the Schedule are in place, including generating Lists necessary for direct mail, telemarketing or email activities.
 - c. The Use Parent Source Code box is checked if the Schedule will use the Campaign's Source Code.
 - d. Coordinator. The person responsible for the Schedule.
 - e. Source Code. This can be unique to the schedule or if the Use Parent Source Code checkbox is selected, this will match the Source Code for the Campaign.

-
- f. **Activity Type and Activity.** This are set when the Schedule is created and may not be modified.
 - g. **Marketing Medium.** The marketing channel the Schedule is processed through.
 - h. **Currency.**
 - i. **Time Zone.** This is the time zone for the geographic location where the Schedule Activity will be taking place.
 - j. **Start and End Dates and Start and End Times.**
 - k. **Objective.**
 - l. **Priority.**
 - m. **Language.** The Language that the Schedule should be carried out in.
 - n. **Description.**
5. The Trigger Details section has the following fields.
 - a. **Select Do Not Use Trigger to executed the Schedule manually at the Start Date and Start Time specified.** Select Use Trigger to have the Schedule activated only after the specified Trigger has met its test condition.
 - b. **Select a Trigger Condition.**
 - c. **Executed After Approval by.** If this use of a Trigger must be approved, Select an Approval person.
 - d. **Send Notification to.** When the Trigger is approved, the notification should be sent to this person.
 6. **Click Update to save your changes.** A Confirmation message is displayed.

Creating a Campaign Schedule

Campaign Schedules may have many different components as determined by the Activity Type and Activity and defined in Custom Setup on the Administration tab. Your Campaign Schedule may not have all the Side Panel Menu items listed.

Campaigns Schedules are created to execute Campaign activities.

Prerequisites

An existing campaign

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select a Setup Type for the Campaign Schedule. The Setup Types are created by your system administrator. The Create Campaign Schedule page will redisplay after selecting a Setup Type to update the Activity Type and Activity fields. If the Activity Type can utilize a Trigger, the Trigger Details section will be added to the Create Campaign Schedule page.
6. Enter a Name for the Campaign Schedule.
7. Select a Language to be used to for the Campaign Schedule execution.
8. Use Parent Source Code is checked by default. If creating multiple Schedules for a particular Campaign, it may be useful to have unique source codes for each schedule. Deselect the Use Parent Source Code checkbox to generate a unique Source Code for the Campaign Schedule. If left checked, the Source Code for the Campaign will be used.
9. The Coordinator is the person responsible for the execution of the Campaign Schedule.
10. The Source Code field should be left blank. The system will insert the Campaign Source Code or generate a unique Source Code for the Campaign Schedule.
11. The Activity Type and Activity are determined by the Setup Type and may not be modified.
12. Select a Marketing Medium if desired. Certain execution channels, such as Oracle Advanced Outbound, require particular Marketing Mediums to be selected for a Campaign Schedule.
13. Select a Currency for the Campaign Schedule.
14. Select a Time Zone for the geographic location where the Schedule Activity will be taking place.
15. Enter Start and End Dates and Start and End Times.

16. Select an Objective.
17. Select a Priority. The priority will determine which Schedules executing at the same time are executed first.
18. Enter a Description.
19. Complete the Trigger Details section:
 - a. Select Do Not Use Trigger to executed the Schedule manually at the Start Date and Start Time specified. Select Use Trigger to have the Schedule activated only after the specified Trigger has met its test condition.
 - b. Select a Trigger Condition. Executed After Approval by. If this use of a Trigger must be approved, Select an Approval person.
 - c. Send Notification to. When the Trigger is approved, the notification should be sent to this person.
20. Click **Create**. The Campaign Schedule Details Page with the Side Panel Menu displays.

Adding a Message to a Campaign Schedule

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign Schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Message.
2. Select a Message Type.
3. Click Go at the end of the Message field to display a list of messages of the selected Type.
4. Select a Message to add to the Campaign Schedule.
5. Click **Update**.
6. A confirmation message is displayed.
7. Click on the Message link to display the details page for the message.

Removing a Message from a Campaign Schedule

Prerequisites

A Campaign Schedule with a Message

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Message.
7. Select the checkbox in the Remove column of the Campaign Schedule Message table for the Message to be removed.
8. Click **Update**.
9. A confirmation message is displayed.

Selecting Products or Product Families for a Campaign Schedule

Selecting a Products or Product families for a Campaign Schedule limits that Campaign Schedule to those Products or Product Families. You can also use the functionality to exclude products from the schedule.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign and Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.

4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Products.
7. To select a Product Family for a Campaign Schedule, click Go in the Category column to display a list of Product Families. Select a Product Family to fill in the Category and Description columns. If this Product Family is to be excluded from the Campaign Schedule, select the checkbox in the Exclude column.
8. To select a Product for a Campaign Schedule, Click Go in the Product Number column to display a list of Products. Select a Product to fill in the Product Number and Product Name columns. If this Product is to be excluded from the Campaign Schedule, select the checkbox in the Exclude column.
9. Click **Update**. The system displays a confirmation message.

Removing Product or Product Families from Campaign Schedules

Use this procedure to remove products from a campaign schedule.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Products.
7. Select the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Product or Product Family to be removed.
8. Click **Update**.
9. A confirmation message is displayed.

Adding a Deliverable to a Campaign Schedule

Adding a Deliverable to a Campaign Schedule sets up automated delivery of the Deliverable when used with a Direct Marketing Campaign Schedule.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Deliverables.
7. Select a Deliverable Type:
 - a. Creative
 - b. Deliverable
 - c. Direct Marketing
 - d. Event
 - e. Press/Analyst
 - f. Publishing
 - g. Sales Tools
 - h. Web
 - i. Email
8. Click **Go** in the Name column to display a list of Deliverables of the selected type. Select a Deliverable to complete the Name field.
9. Enter a Quantity.
10. Select a date the Deliverable is Needed By.

11. Select a Fulfill on action type (Events Only):
 - a. On Cancellation.
 - b. On Enrollment.
 - c. On Registration.
12. Click **Update**.
13. A confirmation message is displayed.

Guidelines

The Fulfillment action type is used only for Events.

Note

You can create a Deliverable.

Removing a Deliverable from a Campaign Schedule

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Deliverables.
7. Select the checkbox in the Remove column of the appropriate Deliverable.
8. Click Update.
9. A confirmation message displays.

Sourcing Budgets for Campaign Schedules

Securing funding for the cost of the Campaign Schedule is accomplished on the Budgets item of the Side Panel Menu.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Budgets.
7. The Estimated Budget for the Campaign is shown.
8. To request funding from a Budget, click Create Request and perform the following:
 - a. Select a Source Type, either Budget or Person. If Person is selected, that person will select a budget to source funds from during the Notification process.
 - b. Click Go to display a list of available sources of the selected type. A Trade Management type budget must be selected. A Trade Management budget contains the necessary accrual account information.
 - c. The source code for the selected source along with the source's owner are filled in.
 - d. The Budget Recipient section has been completed. The Request Date has also be completed with the current date.
 - e. Select the requestor's name in the Required By field.
 - f. Enter a Requested Amount.
 - g. Enter a Holding Owner if the funding source is derived from a partner or a vendor.

3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Budgets.
7. Locate the Budget Source line to be removed.
8. Select the checkbox in the Remove column.
9. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section.
10. A confirmation message is displayed.

Transferring Funds from a Campaign Schedule to a Budget

Creating a Transfer returns budget funds to a budget. This is generally used to return a partial amount back to a budget.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Budgets.
7. To request a transfer of funds from the Campaign Schedule to a Budget, click Create Transfer and perform the following:
 - a. Select a Source Type.
 - b. Click Go to display a list of recipients of the selected type.
 - c. The source code for the selected source along with the source's owner are filled in.

- d. The Request Date has also be completed with the current date.
 - e. Enter the Transferred Amount.
 - f. Enter a Holding Owner if the funding source is derived from a partner or a vendor.
 - g. Select a Transfer Reason: Initial Sourcing is the only one available. Enter a Justification for the request.
 - h. Click Create.
8. The information entered will be summarized on the Budget page:
- a. Type. The Budget Source Type.
 - b. From/To. Indicates if funds are being drawn from a budget to the Campaign Schedule or if funds are transferred to a budget
 - c. Name. The Name of the budget.
 - d. Amount. The Amount of the request or transfer.
 - e. Approved Amount. The amount of the request or transfer that was approved by the owner of the budget. The Approved Amount may not be as much as the Requested Amount.
 - f. Status. The status of the request.
 - g. Request Date. The date of the request.
 - h. Details. Click the icon in the Details column to view the details of the Budget Request or Budget Transfer.
 - i. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section to display the most current information.

Updating Campaign Schedule Budgets

Campaign Schedule Budget statuses and approvals may change while the details of the Campaign Schedule are being accessed. Use this procedure to update the Budget information for an Campaign Schedule.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Budgets.
7. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section to redisplay the Sourcing Details table with the latest information.

Campaign Schedule Costs

Costs and Revenues are tracked using Metrics. Cost and Revenue Metrics are special metrics with features specific to accounting for costs and revenue. The Costs page lists the Cost and Revenue Metrics associated with the Campaign Schedule. The Costs page allows you to see the forecasted and actual values for each Cost or Revenue Metric.

Prerequisites

- Cost and Revenue Metrics must be set up before associating them with a Campaign Schedule.
- An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Costs.

7. Select a View Option:
 - a. Details
 - b. Input Only
 - c. Function Only
8. To display the underlying Cost or Revenue information, click the plus sign (+) on the folder just to the left of the Rollup Cost or Rollup Revenue Name.
9. New row(s) appear detailing the individual metrics or costs that comprise the Rollup Cost or Rollup Revenue Metric.

These individual metrics may themselves, be Rollup Costs or Rollup Revenue Metrics as well.
10. To display a chart representation of a Rollup Cost or Revenue, click the Chart icon next to the desired Cost or Revenue.

By default, this selection will display a pie chart of the child components of the Rollup Cost or Revenue.
11. To display history for a Cost or Revenue:
 - a. Navigate to the History section.
 - b. Specify the desired Cost or Revenue, a date range and a time interval and type of data aggregation (cumulative or incremental).
 - c. Click View History.

The results are displayed in both tabular and chart format.

Entering New Campaign Schedule Costs and Revenues

Prerequisites

- The Cost or Revenue Metric must be set up.
- An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)

3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
7. Click Go at the end of the Name field in the Create New section of the Campaign Schedule - Cost Details page to display a list of available Cost and Revenue Metrics. Select a Cost or Revenue Metric from the list
8. Enter Forecast and Actual amounts in their respective columns, if known. Select a Transaction Date and enter a Description.
9. Click **Create**.
10. A system displays a confirmation message.
11. To see your entry in the Cost/Revenue section, click **Refresh**.

Removing a Campaign Schedule Cost or Revenue

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule with an associated Cost or Revenue Metric

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
7. Display the Cost or Revenue to be removed. This may require displaying the underlying Cost or Revenue Metric components. Click the plus sign (+) next to a Cost or Revenue to display the underlying components.

8. Select the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Cost or Revenue Metric to be removed.
9. Click **Update**.

Selecting a Target Group for a Campaign Schedule

The Target Group for a Campaign Schedule specifies the List associated with the Campaign Schedule. Certain Activity Types require a generated List in order to make the Campaign status Active. For example, any Direct Marketing Activity Type, whether the specific activity is Direct Mail, Email, Fax or Telemarketing, requires a generated List.

Prerequisites

- A generated List
- An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule

Steps

1. From the Campaign Schedule Details Page, navigate to Execution > Target Group.
2. Select the appropriate List Type. The choices are Employee List (for internal employees) or List.
3. Click **Go** in the List Name column to display all available Lists for the selected List Type.
4. Select a List and click Update at the bottom of the page to update the Date Generated, Owner, and Record Count columns. If the Record Count column displays a number of records, click the icon in the View Entries column to view the entries in the List. If the Date Generated column is blank, the List must be generated before it may be used.
5. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 for each List to add to the Campaign Schedule.
6. To view the details for the List or to generate the List, click the link in the List Name column.
7. In the Options and Summary Section:
 - a. Select a Control Group if desired. A Control Group is a group of List entries, selected under the same criteria, which do not receive the Campaign information. Their response may be compared to the responses generated from the List entries who receive the Campaign information to

- determine the benefits of marketing to customers and prospects who meet the List criteria.
 - b. Create a Control Group by entering a percentage of the total entries to be included or a specific number of entries to be included.
 - c. Determine whether List entries should be purged after the Grace Period specified in the program profile options. This is useful in helping to clean out your list entries when you are done using the lists.
8. Click Generate Target Group to create the Target Group from all the Lists selected. Suppression Lists, such as those to remove the entries marked Do Not Call, and Deduplication Rules are applied.
 9. The following will be updated with record counts:
 - a. Available Records From Selected Lists
 - b. Suppressed Records
 - c. Duplicated Records
 - d. Total Records

Removing a List from a Target Group of a Campaign Schedule

Prerequisites

A existing Campaign Schedule with a Target Group containing one or more Lists

Steps

1. From the Campaign Schedule Details Page, navigate to Execution > Target Group.
2. Select the checkbox in the Remove column of the List to be removed.
3. Click Update at the bottom of the page.
4. If the Target Group has been generated, click Generate Target Group to regenerate the Target Group without the List you removed.

Campaign Schedule Metrics

Metrics are used to measure different aspects of Marketing Campaigns and Events. The most obvious Metric is the Response Metric which records the response to the Campaign as purchases are made through various channels. Metrics associated

with a particular Campaign Schedule track the aspects of that Campaign Schedule's activities only.

Viewing Campaign Schedule Metrics

Use this procedure to view your schedule metrics.

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule with an associated Metric.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
7. Select a View Option:
 - a. Details
 - b. Input Only
 - c. Function Only
8. Rollup Metrics are displayed with a plus sign (+) next to them. To display the underlying Metrics, click the plus sign (+) on the folder just to the left of the Metric Name.
9. New row(s) appear detailing the individual metrics that comprise the Rollup Metric.

These individual metrics may themselves, be Rollup Metrics as well.
10. To display a chart representation of a Rollup Metric, click the Chart icon next to the desired Metric.

By default, this selection will display a pie chart of the child components of the Rollup Metric.

11. To display history for a Metric:
 - a. Navigate to the History section.
 - b. Specify the desired Metric, a date range and a time interval and type of data aggregation (cumulative or incremental).
 - c. Click View History.

The results are displayed in both tabular and chart format.

Entering New Campaign Schedule Metrics

Prerequisites

- An established metric
- An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
7. Click Go at the end of the Name field in the Create New section of the Campaign Schedule - Metrics page to display a list of available Metrics. Select a Metric from the list.
8. Enter Forecast and Actual values in their respective columns, if known. Select a Transaction Date and enter a Description.
9. Click **Create**. A Confirmation Message is displayed.

To display your entry in the Metrics section, click **Refresh**.

Removing a Campaign Schedule Metric

Prerequisites

An existing Campaign with a Campaign Schedule with an associated Metric

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Campaigns.
2. If the desired Campaign is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Campaign link to display the Campaign Details Page.
4. Navigate to Execution > Campaign Schedules.
5. Select the appropriate Campaign Schedule.
6. Navigate to Tracking > Metrics.
7. Display the Metric to be removed. This may require displaying the underlying Rollup Metric components. Click the plus sign (+) next to a Rollup Metric to display the underlying components.
8. Select the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Metric to be removed.
9. Click Update.

Creating a Telemarketing Campaign Schedule Using Oracle Advanced Outbound

Prerequisites

- A list with names, phone numbers and DNC (Do not call) information
- An activity called “Telemarketing”
- A custom setup having a Telemarketing activity
- A marketing medium (setup for AO)

Steps

1. Navigate to the desired Campaign and select its link: Campaign > Campaigns. If the desired campaign is not displayed, click next until the desired campaign is shown or select a different saved search (*refer to saved search section*) to display the desired campaign.

2. Select the Execution item from the Side Panel Menu.
3. Select Schedule sub item from the Side Panel Menu.
4. Click the appropriate link to edit an existing schedule or click Create a new schedule.
5. Select a Setup Type. The List of Values (LOV) comes from the information entered in Custom Setups by your DBA. Wait a moment after making a selection as the page will rewrite and complete fields specified in the Custom Setup.
6. Give the schedule a Name.
7. Select a Language
8. Select a Coordinator from the list of people within the organization.
9. Leave the Source Code blank. This will be filled in by the system.
10. Select a Marketing Medium
11. Select a currency, if desired.
12. Select a time zone.
13. Select Start and End Dates and enter Start and End Times.
14. Select an Objective.
15. Select a Priority.
16. Optionally, enter a description.
17. Trigger Details
 - a. Select Use Trigger if a trigger condition must be met for the Schedule to execute.
 - b. Select the Trigger Condition
18. Select a name for the Execute After Approval By field. This is required for schedules executed through Advanced Outbound.
19. Select a name for the Send Notification To field. A notification will be send to this person when the trigger approval is given.
20. Any additional information?

Programs

Programs are an umbrella object used to combine different Campaigns, Events, Deals, Promotions and other objects into one entity. In this way, a new product launch may have events, campaigns, promotions, advertising, trade management deals and more coordinated from one point in Oracle Marketing Online.

Help is available on the following topics:

- [Viewing Programs](#)
- [Creating a Program](#)
- [Selecting Program Components](#)
- [Selecting a Program Message](#)
- [Program Costs](#)

Viewing Programs

Prerequisites

A program

Steps

1. Programs are listed on the Programs Summary Page with the Program Name, Short Name, Parent, Status, Start and End Dates.
2. To view the Hierarchy of the Program, click the icon in the View Hierarchy column.
3. The Program Tree page displays the following:
 - a. Name of component. To view the component's details, click the Link in the Name column.
 - b. Type of component.
 - c. The component's Source Code.
 - d. The Program the component belongs to.
 - e. The component's status.
 - f. The component's Start and End Dates.
4. To view the Program's details, click the link in the Name column.

Notes

If any of the components shown on the Program Tree is a Program, you can display its components by clicking the plus sign (+) next to the Program Name.

Creating a Program

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Programs.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Enter a Name for the Program.
4. If the Program has a parent Program, click Go to select it.
5. Enter a Short Name for the Program.
6. Select a Business Unit.
7. Select a Purpose.
8. The Owner field defaults to the logged in user. Click Go to change this field.
9. Select Start and End Periods. These fields are accounting periods.
10. Select Start and End Dates.
11. Select a Currency.
12. Select the Global checkbox if the Program has a global scope.
13. Select a Country for the Program.
14. If the Program should not be viewed by others, click the Confidential checkbox.
15. Enter a Description.
16. Click **Create** to create the Program.

Selecting Program Components

Use this procedure to add various marketing objects to a Program.

Prerequisites

An existing Program

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Programs.
2. If the desired Program is not displayed on the Summary Page, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Program Name link to view or edit. The Program Details Page displays.
4. Navigate to Planning > Components.
5. Select a Component Type from the following:
 - a. Campaigns
 - b. Collection
 - c. Deal
 - d. Trade Promotion
 - e. Program. Programs may be part of other, parent, Programs
 - f. Event
 - g. One-Off Event
 - h. Partner
 - i. Event Promotion
6. Click **Go** in the Name column to display a list of objects of the selected Type. Select an object to insert its name in the Name column.
7. Click **Update** to update the remaining columns:
 - a. Country
 - b. Source Code
 - c. Status
 - d. Email
 - e. Start and End Dates

Selecting a Program Message

The Message item on the Side Panel Menu is used to associate a marketing Message with a Program. Marketing Messages refer to products, products families or organization vision.

Prerequisites

An existing message

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Programs.
2. If the desired Program is not displayed on the Summary Page, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Program Name link to view or edit. The Program Details Page displays.
4. Navigate to Planning > Message.
5. The Message page displays.
6. Select the following Items:
 - a. Message Type: Product, Product Family or Vision
 - b. Click **Go** at the end of the Message column to select a Message.
 - c. Click **Update**.
7. A confirmation message will be displayed.

Removing a Message from a Program

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Programs.
2. If the desired Program is not displayed on the Summary Page, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)

3. Click the Program Name link to view or edit. The Program Details Page displays.
4. Navigate to Planning > Message.
5. Click the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Message to be removed.
6. Click Update.
7. A confirmation message is displayed.

Program Costs

Costs and Revenues are tracked using Metrics. Cost and Revenue Metrics are special Metrics with features specific to accounting for costs and revenue. The Costs page lists the Cost and Revenue Metrics associated with the Program. The Costs page allows you to see the forecasted and actual values for each Cost or Revenue Metric.

Viewing Program Costs and Revenues

Costs and Revenue Metrics are used to record costs and revenue associated with a Program.

Prerequisites

- Cost and Revenue Metrics must be set up before associating them with a Program.
- An existing Program.

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Program.
2. If the desired Program is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
4. Select a View Option:
 - d. Details.
 - e. Input Only
 - f. Function Only

5. To display the underlying Cost or Revenue information, click the plus sign (+) on the folder just to the left of the Rollup Cost or Rollup Revenue Name.

New row(s) appear detailing the individual metrics or costs that comprise the Rollup Cost or Rollup Revenue Metric. These individual metrics may themselves, be Rollup Costs or Rollup Revenue Metrics as well.

Entering New Program Costs and Revenues

Prerequisites

- The Cost or Revenue Metric must be set up
- An existing program

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Programs.
2. If the desired Program is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Program link to display the Program Details Page.
4. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
5. Click Go at the end of the Name field in the Create New section of the Program - Cost Details page to display a list of available Cost and Revenue Metrics. Select a Cost or Revenue Metric from the list
6. Enter Forecast and Actual amounts in their respective columns, if known. Select a Transaction Date and enter a Description.
7. Click **Create**. A Confirmation Message is displayed.
To see your entry in the Cost/Revenue section, click **Refresh**.

Removing a Program Cost or Revenue

Prerequisites

An existing Program with an associated Cost or Revenue Metric

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Programs.

2. If the desired Program is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or using by QuickFind or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Program link to display the Program Details Page.
4. Navigate to Planning > Costs.
5. Display the Cost or Revenue to be removed. This may require displaying the underlying Cost or Revenue Metric components. Click the plus sign (+) next to a Cost or Revenue to display the underlying components.
6. Select the checkbox in the Remove column next to the Cost or Revenue Metric to be removed.
7. Click **Update**. A confirmation message is displayed.

Offers

Offers may be created and attached to Campaigns or Events or to Products. They may also stand alone.

Offers come in many different varieties which are used in different ways. The two basic types offers are those which apply to the B2C relationship. Those offers benefit the consumer directly. The other type of offers are those which apply to the B2B2C relationship. Those offers benefit the distributor or reseller of a manufacturer's products. For example, a manufacturer of crackers gives a retailer a special discount to advertise it's crackers during the same time period as the manufacturer's national television campaign. These types of Offers fall under the realm of Trade Management.

Help is available for:

- [Marketing Offers](#)
- [Viewing and Editing an Offer](#)
- [Creating Offers](#)
- [Accrual Offers](#)
- [Completing the Offer](#)

Marketing Offers

Marketing Offers (B2B) include such offer types as: Accruals, Lump Sum, Off Invoice, Order Value, Promotional Goods, Simple Discount, Terms Upgrade and

Trade Deal. These Offer types are described below. Each Offer type may have a unique Side Panel Menu with some of all the following: General, Advanced Options, Budget, Market Eligibility, Contact Point, Notes, Attachments, and Tasks.

Offer	Description
Accruals	Used for Trade Management, an Accrual Offer is an offer where a distributor or reseller accrues an amount due to them based on purchases. The accrual account value builds over time as orders are placed. Periodically the accrual account value is paid to the distributor or reseller which returns the accrual account value to zero.
Lump Sum	Used for Marketing Offers, a Lump Sum Offer, is an amount paid to the consumer as a result of a purchase.
Off Invoice	The Off Invoice Offer is used for both Marketing and Trade Management Offers. The Off Invoice Offer is an amount subtracted from the total value of the invoice based on the products purchased on that invoice. In some parts of the world, this type of offer is referred to as an On Invoice offer, indicating that the discount appears on the same invoice as the purchases that generated the discount.
Order Value	Used for both Marketing and Trade Management Offers, the Order Value offer is a discount based on the quantity or value of the products purchased. Order Value Offers generally relate to one product or product family. Order Value offers are often tiered. A tiered Order Value offer generates greater amount or percentage discounts as the value of the order increases.
Promotional Goods	Used for Marketing Offers, a Promotional Goods Offer includes an additional product or service with the purchase of the specified product or product family. A free printer with the purchase of a computer is a common example of a Promotional Goods Offer.
Simple Discount	Used for Marketing Offers, a Simple Discount is an amount or percentage off the price of a product or product family.
Terms Upgrade	Used for both Marketing and Trade Management Offers (Verify) and Terms Upgrade offer discounts on costs associated with the purchase. A common example is free shipping for orders placed within a certain date range or over a threshold value.

Offer	Description
Trade Deal	Used in Trade Management, a Trade Deal Offer is generally made by a salesperson directly with a representative of the distributor or reseller. Trade Deals may have a wide variety of parameters and discounts involved.

Viewing and Editing an Offer

Offers have additional Side Panel Menu items in addition to the General Page. Under the Planning item there are Advanced Options and Budget sub items. Under Execution is the Market Eligibility sub item. Under Collaboration there are the Contact Point, Notes, Tasks, and Attachments sub items. See the Common Components section for more information on the Collaboration Side Panel Menu sub items.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Offers (or Products > Offers)
2. If the desired Offer is not displayed on the list, search for it by changing the View Type, or by using Quick Find or Advanced Search. (See Personalizing Summary Pages.)
3. Click the Offer link to view or edit. The Offer Details Page displays.
4. The general fields on the Offer Details Page are:
 - a. Offer Name
 - b. Offer Type
 - c. Status
 - d. Offer Code. Generally, this is system generated.
 - e. Request Only. The offer is only available if the customer requests it.
 - f. Start and End Dates.
 - g. Currency.
 - h. Discount Level.
 - i. Reusable. The Offer may be attached to multiple campaigns.

- j. Committed Amount.
 - k. Description.
5. Qualifiers:
- a. Order Dates. A date range in which the order must be placed.
 - b. Ship Dates. A date range in which the order must be shipped. For Trade Management Offers this date relates to the Requested Ship Date.
 - c. Performance Dates. A date range in which some performance action may be required by a distributor or reseller. Performance Dates are generally used with Trade Management (B2B2C) Offers.
6. Discount Rules
- a. Level. The product levels that this offer applies to. The Level may be an Item # (Product), an Item Category (Product Family), All Items (useful for Modification of Terms Offers) or iStore section.
 - b. Name.
 - c. UOM. Unit Measure (make sure this is on the acronym list).
 - d. Tier Type. Either Single or Multiple.
 - e. Minimum Volume. The minimum purchase, in quantity or amount, of that Level required to receive the offer.
 - f. Volume Type. Whether the Minimum Volume is stated as an amount or a quantity.
 - g. Discount.
 - h. Discount Type. Whether the Discount is stated as a percentage or an amount.
 - i. Active. Whether this particular Discount Rule is Active.
 - j. Details. Additional Information may be entered in the Details Page. Click this icon to display the Details Page.

Creating Offers

Offers come in many different varieties. Each section below outlines the information required and the steps to be taken in order to create each type of Offer.

Accrual Offers

Trade Management B2B2C transaction is the only functionality using accrual offers.

Prerequisites

An Accrual Offer setup (seeded)

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign, Offers.
2. Click Create.
3. Select the Setup Type Accruals. This may cause the page to redisplay.
4. Enter an Offer Name.
5. Leave Offer Code blank, the system will generate a unique offer code.
6. Check Request Only if this offer is to be made only by request from the distributor or reseller.
7. Select Start and End Dates for the Offer.
8. Select a Currency.
9. Select the Discount Level this offer will apply to:
 - a. Group of Lines
 - b. Line. Applies to the invoice, order line by order line.
 - c. Order. Applies to the invoice based on the entire order.
10. Select whether this order is reusable. Reusable orders may be attached to multiple campaigns.
11. Select a Campaign for the Offer by clicking Go.
12. Enter a Description for the Offer.
13. Click Create.
14. The Offer Details Screen Appears.

Completing the Offer

The information required to complete the Qualifiers and Discount Rules section, as well as the rest of the Side Panel Menu items are detailed below. If not already displayed, select the desired Offer from the Offer Summary Page.

Offer Details Page

The Details Page is completed by adding the date Qualifiers and by completing the Discount Rules table.

Prerequisites

An accrual offer

Steps

1. Click the General item from the Side Panel Menu if not already displayed.
2. Select Qualifier From and To Dates for the following:
 - a. Order Dates. This the date range for orders to be eligible for the Offer.
 - b. Ship Dates. This is the date range for shipping of eligible orders. For Trade Management Offers the Ship Dates are very important as products should be at the distributor or reseller in time to coincide with other components of a Campaign or Program.
 - c. Performance Dates. This is a date range for performance of the Trade Management Offer requirements. Performance Dates are important for Trade Management Offers as the distributor's or reseller's activities should coincide with other components of a Campaign or Program.
3. Creating a Discount Rule.
 - a. Select a Level: Item #(Product) or Item Category (Product Family), All Items or iStore Section.
 - b. Click Go in the Name column to select an item of the selected Level.
 - c. Click Go in the UOM column to select a Unit of Measure for the item.
 - d. Select a Tier Type: Single or Multiple.
 - e. Minimum Volume. The minimum purchase, in quantity or amount, of that item required to receive the offer.
 - f. Volume Type. Whether the Minimum Volume is stated as an amount or a quantity.
 - g. Discount.
 - h. Discount Type. Whether the Discount is stated as a percentage or an amount.
 - i. Active. Whether this particular Discount Rule is Active.

-
- j. Click Update. A confirmation message will be displayed.
4. Details for a Discount Rule Line. These details are optional, but may be very useful in precisely defining the availability of the Offer.
 - a. The Offer Name, Level, Name, Unit of Measure, Tier Type, Minimum Volume and Discount from the Offer Details page are displayed. The UOM, Minimum Volume and Discount information may be modified.
 - b. Enter Order Value qualifiers, a minimum amount in the From field and a maximum amount in the To field.
 - c. Enter the Maximum Units per Order.
 - d. Enter the Maximum Units per Customer.
 - e. Enter the Maximum Orders per Customer.
 - f. Enter Maximum Quantity per Discount Rule in Units. This is the maximum number of units that may be sold per this Discount Rule.
 - g. Enter a Maximum Committed Amount per Discount Rule. This is the maximum discount cost available for this Discount Rule, i.e., the Discount Rule may be capped at an amount of 50,000.
 - h. Click Update. A confirmation message will be displayed.
 - i. Click Return to return to the Offer Details page.

Offers Advanced Options

Advanced Options are used to more precisely control the ranking of Offers in Oracle Advanced Pricing.

Prerequisites

An existing offer

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Advanced Options.
2. The Offer Name, Start, and End Dates are displayed.
3. Select a Phase from the following:
 - a. List Line Adjustment.
 - b. All Lines Adjustment.

- c. Header Level Adjustments.
 - d. Line Charges.
 - e. Header Level Charges.
 - f. Line Charges - Manual.
 - g. Modifiers for BOOK Event.
 - h. Logistics Exchange Shipment Charges.
4. Select Print on Invoice to print the Phase information on the invoice.
 5. Select one of the Incompatible Group, if appropriate:
 - a. Exclusive Group
 - b. Level 1 Incompatibility.
 - c. Level 2 Incompatibility.
 - d. Level 3 Incompatibility.
 6. Select a Bucket if appropriate.
 - a. Base Price
 - b. Pricing Adjustments Bucket 1
 - c. Pricing Adjustments Bucket 2
 - d. Pricing Adjustments Bucket 3
 7. Set the Level of Precedence.

Offer Budgets

Securing funding for the cost of the Offer is accomplished on the Budgets item of the Side Panel Menu.

Prerequisites

An existing offer

Steps

1. Navigate to Planning > Budgets.
2. Enter an Estimated Budget for the Offer.

3. Click the Update button underneath the Estimated Budget field. A Confirmation message will be displayed.
4. To request funding from a Budget, click Create Request and perform the following:
 - a. Select a Source Type, either Budget or Person. If you request funds from a Person, that person will select a budget during their response to the request notification.
 - b. Click Go to display a list of available sources of the selected type. A Trade Management type budget must be selected. A Trade Management budget contains the necessary accrual account information.
 - c. The source code for the selected source along with the source's owner are filled in.
 - d. The Budget Recipient section has been completed. The Request Date has also be completed with the current date.
 - e. Select the requestor's name in the Required By field.
 - f. Enter a Requested Amount.
 - g. Enter a Holding Owner if the funding source is derived from a partner or a vendor.
 - h. Select a Transfer Reason: Initial Sourcing is the only one available.
 - i. Enter a Justification for the request.
 - j. Click Create.
5. The information entered will be summarized on the Budget page:
 - a. Type. The Budget Source Type.
 - b. From/To. Indicates if funds are being drawn from a budget to the Offer or if funds are transferred to
 - c. Name. The Name of the budget or offer.
 - d. Amount. The Amount of the request or transfer.
 - e. Approved Amount. The amount of the request or transfer that was approved by the owner of the budget. The Approved Amount may not be as much as the Requested Amount.
 - f. Status. The status of the request.
 - g. Request Date. The date of the request.

- h. Details. Click the icon in the Details column to view the details of the Budget Request or Budget Transfer.
- i. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section to display the most current information.

Removing a Budget Request from an Offer

Unapproved funding sources may be removed from an Offer. If a request to a funding source was entered, but is no longer needed, the request may be removed. Once a funding source has approved the request, the funds are associated with the Offer until the Offer is expired or the funds are transferred.

Prerequisites

An existing offer

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Offers.
2. Select the appropriate Offer. If the Offer is not displayed on the Offers Summary Page, locate the Offer by using Quick Find or Advanced Search.
3. Click the Offer link in the Name column to display the Offer Details page.
4. Navigate to Planning > Budget on the Side Panel Menu.
5. Locate the Budget Source line to be removed.
6. Select the checkbox in the Remove column.
7. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section.
8. A confirmation message will be displayed.

Transferring Funds from an Offer to a Budget

Creating a Transfer returns budget funds to a budget. This is generally used to return a partial amount back to a budget.

Prerequisites

An existing offer

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Offers.

2. Select the appropriate Offer. If the Offer is not displayed on the Offers Summary Page, locate the Offer by using Quick Find or Advanced Search.
3. Click the Offer link in the Name column to display the Offer Details page.
4. Navigate to Planning > Budgets on the Side Panel Menu.
5. To request a transfer of funds from the Offer to a Budget, click Create Transfer and perform the following:
 - a. Select a Source Type.
 - b. Click Go to display a list of recipients of the selected type.
 - c. The source code for the selected source along with the source's owner are filled in.
 - d. The Request Date has also be completed with the current date.
 - e. Enter the Transferred Amount.
 - f. Enter a Holding Owner if the funding source is derived from a partner or a vendor.
 - g. Select a Transfer Reason: Initial Sourcing is the only one available.
 - h. Enter a Justification for the request.
 - i. Click Create.
6. The information entered will be summarized on the Budget page:
 - a. Type. The Budget Source Type.
 - b. From/To. Indicates if funds are being drawn from a budget to the Offer or if funds are transferred to
 - c. Name. The Name of the budget or offer.
 - d. Amount. The Amount of the request or transfer.
 - e. Approved Amount. The amount of the request or transfer that was approved by the owner of the budget. The Approved Amount may not be as much as the Requested Amount.
 - f. Status. The status of the request.
 - g. Request Date. The date of the request.
 - h. Details. Click the icon in the Details column to view the details of the Budget Request or Budget Transfer.

- i. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section to display the most current information.

Updating Offer Budgets

Offer Budget statuses and approvals may change while the details of the Offer are being accessed. Use this procedure to update the Budget information for an Offer.

Prerequisites

An existing offer

Steps

1. Navigate to Campaign > Offers.
2. Select the appropriate Offer. If the Offer is not displayed on the Offers Summary Page, locate the Offer by using Quick Find or Advanced Search.
3. Click the Offer link in the Name column to display the Offer Details page.
4. Navigate to Planning > Budgets on the Side Panel Menu.
5. Click Update in the Sourcing Details section to redisplay the Sourcing Details table with the latest information.

The Event Tab

Use the Event tab to manage marketing events.

Help is available on:

- [Viewing and editing an event](#)
- [Viewing and editing an event schedule](#)
- [Creating an event](#)
- [Creating an event schedule](#)

Viewing and Editing an Event

Use this procedure to view and edit an existing event.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Event > Event** subtab.
2. If the desired event is not displayed in the list, search for it by changing the View, or using QuickFind and Advanced Search.
3. Click on the event name link to view or edit.

The Event Details page displays.

Viewing and Editing an Event Schedule

Use this procedure to view and edit an existing event schedule.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Event > Events**.
2. If the desired event is not displayed in the list, search for it by changing the View, or using QuickFind and Advanced Search.
3. Click the event name link to view or edit. The Event Details page appears.
4. Review or edit as appropriate.

Alternately, you can:

1. Navigate to **Event > Events Schedules**.
2. If the desired event is not displayed in the list, search for it by changing the View, or using QuickFind and Advanced Search.
3. Click the event name link to view or edit.
4. Click the Execution side panel menu item. The Event Schedule Details page appears.
5. Review or edit as appropriate.

Creating an Event

Use this procedure to create an event. An event holds the general description of an event and provides the structure for reporting costs and dispersing budgets to individual sessions of the event. If your company is planning to train the sales force

in different cities on your new product line, for example, then the event holds information about the course content and the budgets for the individual sessions to be held in the different cities.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to **Event > Events**.

2. Click **Create**.

The Create Event Page appears.

3. Use the Setup Type drop-down list to select the type of event to create. Selecting a type determines which fields are presented. These types are set up by your administrator.

4. Enter a unique source code. Optionally, you can leave the Source Code field blank and the system will generate a unique code after the creation of the event.

5. Enter a name for the event according to naming conventions for your organization, if any.

6. Enter the start date and end date for the event.

7. Optionally, enter the duration of the event.

8. Enter the person who is approving budgets or other activities for this event, if other than yourself.

9. Enter a description of the event.

10. Click **Create**.

The Event Details page appears.

Entering or Editing Information for an Event

Use this procedure to add or to edit details for an event.

Prerequisites

An existing event

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Details page.
2. Enter the budget currency.

Note: You may update the currency field at any time during the theme approval process. The currency field becomes uneditable after budget approval.

3. Select applicable check boxes:
 - Confidential
The information is not released on any web site or telemarketing application prior to the activation of the event.
 - Invite Only
 - Registration Required
 - Payment Required
4. Complete information for the items on the side panel menu. More information on each item is found in the Guidelines section.

Guidelines

If you have budget approvals activated for this setup type, then the budget amount you enter is automatically passed on for approval, based on your predefined approval rules.

The list below includes all available items on the side panel menu used for events.

Only a subset of these attributes may appear on the side panel menu for a given event. This is because different types of events require different types of information.

- Planning
 - Main
 - Category
 - Message
 - Geography

- Event Agenda
- Resource
- Costs and Revenues
- Segments
- Products
- Budget
- Deliverable
- Campaign
- Partners
- Execution
 - Event Schedule
- Tracking
 - Metrics
- Collaboration
 - Contact Point
 - Attachments
 - Tasks
 - Team
 - Notes
 - Publishable Notes

Promoting an Event by Associating It with a Campaign

Events may be promoted by associating the event with a campaign. Use this procedure to associate the event with a campaign.

Prerequisites

An existing campaign and an existing event.

Steps

1. On the Event Details page, click the Campaign attribute.

The Event Details - Campaigns page appears.

2. Use the Campaign Name list of values (LOV) to select the campaign to associate with the event.
3. Click **Update** to save.

Entering an Event Agenda

Use this procedure to enter the agenda for a rollup or event schedule. If the event has multiple activities happening at the same time, split up the event agenda into separate tracks.

You can modify each event schedule agenda to add details pertinent to the specific event schedule. The agenda for an event schedule is valid only for that event schedule.

Prerequisites

An existing event or event schedule

Steps

1. For each item on the agenda:
 - a. If the event takes place over a number of days, then select the day of the event.
 - b. In the Name field, enter the name of the activity.
 - c. If multiple activities are taking place at the same time, create tracks for related activities, so they may be scheduled without overlap.
 - d. Enter a start time and end time for the activity. Times must be in the 12-hour format (HH:MI PM).
2. Click **Update**.
3. In the Details column, click the Details icon to the right of each agenda item created and enter any speaker information or notes for the item.

Entering Speakers and Other Details for an Event

Use this procedure to enter the speaker and other details for an agenda item.

Prerequisites

An existing event with an agenda

Steps

1. Navigate to the **Event Details - Agenda** Details page.
2. If the agenda has a coordinator, enter the name in the Coordinator field.
3. If there is a speaker for this agenda item, click **Go** next to the Name field and use the list of values (LOV) to select the speaker's name.
4. From the Status drop-down list, select the confirmation status for the speaker.
5. Enter any optional comment in the comment field.
6. To enter a note:
 - a. Using the drop-down list, select the note type.
 - b. Enter the note.
 - c. Click **Update**.

Entering Event Venues, Coordinators, and Other Resources

Use this procedure to enter venues, coordinators and other resources for the event.

Prerequisites

- An existing event
- You must establish a venue in administrative setup

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Details - Agenda Details page.
2. Using the Type drop-down list, select the type of resource to associate with the event.
3. Enter the resource's name and role.
4. Select a status from the Status drop-down list.
5. Click **Update**.

Creating an Event Schedule

Use this procedure to create an event schedule. An event schedule tracks individually occurring events. It also records participation and enrollment.

Prerequisites

An existing event

Steps

1. Navigate to Event > Event.
2. Click **Create**.
3. In Event Name, enter the name of the event to associate this event with.
4. In the Event Schedule Name field, enter the name of the event.
5. Select the type of event.
6. If the person responsible for this event is other than yourself, enter that person's name in the Owner field.
7. From the Setup Type drop-down list, select the custom setup for the event. The custom setup is created by the application administrator and determines the type of information to track with an event schedule.
8. Make entries in other optional fields.
9. Click **Create**.

The Event Schedule Details page appears.

Entering or Modifying Details for an Event Schedule

Use this procedure to enter or modify details about an event schedule.

Prerequisites

An existing event schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Details page. This page appears automatically when you create a new event schedule. You can also reach it by the following method:
 - a. Navigate to **Event > Event**

- b. Select the hyperlink for the event schedule you wish to modify.
 - c. Select the General item on the side panel menu.
2. The Source Code field is automatically populated with the unique identifying code generated by the application for this event schedule.
3. Enter the budget currency.

Note: You may update the currency field at any time during the theme approval process. The currency field becomes uneditable after budget approval.

4. Use the Owner LOV to select and assign ownership of this event to someone else.
5. Enter the start and end dates when this event will be available for use.
6. Enter the duration of the event.
7. Select the venue where the event is to be held using the LOV.
8. Make entries in other optional fields, as desired.
9. Select applicable check boxes:
 - Confidential
The information is not released on any web site or telemarketing application prior to the activation of the event.
 - Invite Only:
 - Registration Required:
 - Payment Required:
10. Click **Update**.
11. Complete information in the various items on the side panel menu. In the list below, click the link corresponding the desired attribute.

Guidelines:

The list below includes all item on the side panel menus used for events.

Only a subset of these attributes may be listed on the side panel menu.

- Events Schedule
 - Planning
 - Main
 - Category
 - Registration Setup
 - Message
 - Geography
 - Event Agenda
 - Resource
 - Invite List
 - Costs and Revenues
 - Segments
 - Products
 - Budget
 - Deliverable
 - Campaign
 - Partners
 - Execution
 - Roster
 - Tracking
 - Metrics
 - Collaboration
 - Contact Point
 - Attachments
 - Tasks
 - Team
 - Notes
 - Publishable Notes

Setting Up Event Registration

Use this procedure to specify registration details for an event schedule. This includes determining enrollment numbers and pricing.

Prerequisites

An existing event schedule

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Schedule Details page and select the Registration Setup item from the side panel menu.

The Event Schedule Registration Setup page appears.

2. In the Maximum Size field, enter the maximum number of registrants.
3. To limit registration to the number of registrants you entered in the Maximum Size field, select the **No Overbooking** radio button.
4. To allow people to continue to register for the event regardless of the number entered in the Maximum Size field, select the **Allow Overflow** radio button.
5. To allow overbooking in anticipation of cancellations, select the **Overbook by** radio button.
6. Enter the allowed percentage of overbooking. For example, if the maximum number of registrants is 100 and you enter 10% then the application will allow up to 110 people to attend your original event. To continue to allow registrant application even when registration is full, then:
 - a. Select the **Waitlist Enabled** check box.
 - b. Specify the allowed size of the waitlist by entering a percentage value in the Waitlist field.
 - c. Select a waitlist rule. The default is First Come First Serve: the first person on the waiting list gets the first available place.
7. Enter the minimum size for this event. This number can be used to trigger a cancellation of the event or further campaign activity if the minimum enrollment is not met by the date entered in the Attain Minimum By field.
8. In Attain Minimum By field, enter a date by which the event must reach a minimum enrollment.
9. Select the enrollment start date and time.

10. Enter the enrollment end date and time.
11. Specify the time zone to further clarify the dates and times.
12. If there is a charge for the event, enter the cost and payment details. This information will be added to Oracle Inventory:
 - a. If the attendee cost is based on a price list, select the applicable price list.
 - b. To enter an event price, then enter an amount and the applicable currency.
 - c. For a non-cash payment, select the credit type that is accepted for payment.
 - d. Enter the number that will become the inventory number for this event.
13. If the organization awards credits for attendance:
 - a. From the Credit Type drop-down list, select the type of credits awarded.
 - b. Enter the number of credits awarded for attendance at this event.
14. To view the status of registration, then click the View List hyperlink.
15. Click **Update** to save.

Viewing the Status of Registration for an Event

Use this procedure to view the status of a registration for an event.

Prerequisites

Registration for an event must be handled by a related application such as Oracle TeleSales or Oracle Marketing Online.

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Schedule Details subtab and select the Registration hyperlink.

The Event Schedule Registration Setup page appears.
2. Click the View List link at the bottom of the page.

Event Schedule Details - Registration List subtab appears displaying the registrants for the event and their status.

Publishing Event Notes

Use this procedure to publish notes about an event schedule to Oracle TeleSales. Oracle Marketing Online cannot specify the presentation of the information, it may be used to enter the text to be published.

Prerequisites

Oracle Marketing Online must be configured to work with an organization's web site via a product such as Oracle iStore.

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Schedule Details page and select the Publishable Notes item on the side panel menu.

The Event Schedule Details - Notes subtab appears.

2. To view an existing note, click on the note link at the bottom of the page under the Note History heading.
3. To enter a note to be published:
 - a. Select an optional Note Type.
 - b. Enter the note.
 - c. Click **Update**.

Specifying the Invitation List for an Event Schedule

Use this procedure to specify the list of people to invite to an event schedule.

Prerequisites

A list of invitees

Steps

1. Navigate to the Event Schedule Details page and select the Invite List item from the side panel menu.

The Event Schedule Details - Invitation List page appears.

2. Use the List Name list of values (LOV) to select the list name.
3. Click **Generate Invite List**.

Note: Refer to the Target Group section of this manual for more information on this topic.

The Deliverable Tab

Use the Deliverable tab to store and track electronic files for your creative projects and campaigns. Physical deliverables may also be tracked using the Deliverables tab.

You can also use the Deliverable tab to record and track organization messages relating to products, product families or the organization's vision.

Help is available on:

- [Viewing and editing a deliverable](#)
- [Creating a deliverable](#)
- [Creating a kit of deliverables](#)

The following table lists the different input fields on the Deliverable tab, and an explanation of each.

Field	Description
Setup Type	<p>When creating a new deliverable, you select a Setup type from a drop-down menu. During setup, these categories are associated with a set of attributes such as content, attachments, inventory options, kit options, and so on. These define how you will author your deliverable.</p> <p>For example, email displays an email content cue card entry, without an inventory option.</p> <p>A given setup type may also block a budget or costs option for certain electronic mediums which do not require budgeting.</p>
Name	A unique name identifying the deliverable
Version	A methodology for tracking which update or edit of a deliverable is the most current. You cannot viewing the history of multiple versions of a deliverable with this function.
Language	This defines the valid language for campaigns and events referencing the collateral item.

Field	Description
Category	Based on the selected setup type, the systems displays a set of categories in the Category menu. These categories are defined during setup, and created to catalog different types of collateral per setup type. Examples include: Events, Email, Direct Mail drops, Web promotions, and so on.
Subcategory	After selecting a category, the filtered set of subcategories is displayed, per category, to further narrow the collateral type for tracking. For example, if you choose the Event Category, the subcategories available are demo, event handout, giveaways, signage, staging, video.
Delivery Medium	Use the Delivery Medium to define the storage and fulfillment of the item. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Physical items (hard collateral) are stocked manually or in Oracle Inventory. Physical items include brochures, CDs, promotional merchandise, and gifts to support campaigns, events, and sales leads. ■ Electronic items (soft collateral) are stored in Oracle Marketing and fulfilled via attachments. Note that only the attachments, not the master item itself, is fulfilled for electronic items. Electronic files include pdfs for a product such as data sheets and white papers, web content, creatives, email blocks and mailing scripts to support your campaigns, events, and sales leads. Note that email deliverables must be stored as electronic deliverables.
Start Period	The the beginning of the active period of time for the deliverable.
End Period	The end of the active period of time for the deliverable.
Available From	The date the budget becomes active.
Available To	The date the deliverable becomes available.
Due Date	The date the deliverable is due.
Country	This defines the valid marketing geographic target for campaigns and events referencing the collateral item.
Currency	The operating currency used for the deliverable.
Kit	Toggle for selecting and deselecting whether or not to include available kit options.
Owner	The user who enters the deliverable information is by default the Owner. You can edit this field.

Field	Description
Confidential	No one outside of your team can view or edit the deliverable until the status is Final Loaded.
Description	A brief description of the deliverable.

Viewing and Editing a Deliverable

Use this procedure to view and edit an existing deliverable.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Deliverable tab.
2. Click the link of the deliverable to view or edit it. If the desired deliverable is not displayed, search for it by changing the Saved Search or using QuickFind.
The Deliverable Details page displays.
3. Edit the information on the details page.
4. Click **Update**.

Creating a Deliverable

Use this procedure to create deliverables.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Deliverable tab.
2. Click **Create**.
The Create Deliverable page appears.
3. Select a setup type.
4. Enter a unique name.

5. Enter a Version for the deliverable. Usually this number will be 1 because you are creating a new deliverable. Version is for tracking the most current deliverable updates and edits. It will not provide a history of multiple versions.

Note: Oracle Marketing Online does not maintain versions. A new version will overwrite the previous one.

6. Select a language.
7. Select a category.
8. Select a sub category.
9. Enter the date this deliverable will be available for use.
10. Enter the dates this deliverable will no longer be available for use.
11. Enter the deadline for this deliverable. The deadline must fall on or before the Available From date.
12. Select a country.
13. Select a currency.
14. To select Kit, click the box next to the Kit? option.
15. Enter the deliverable's owner.
16. To disallow viewing or editing of the deliverable, select the **Confidential** check box.
17. Enter a description of the deliverable.
18. Click **Create**.

Adding Associated Electronic Files

There are two types of electronic files available for deliverables:

- Electronic
- Email

Use the following procedures to add electronic and email (respectively) attachments to your deliverable.

For electronic deliverables (non email):

The content of the electronic deliverable is specified in the Attachments cue card entry for the deliverable. For electronic deliverables, the attachments that comprise the master deliverable are fulfilled to customers (once the deliverable becomes available).

1. Navigate to Deliverable > Planning > Attachments.
2. Click **Create** to display the Attachment management window. You can upload content from a file, enter text, or enter a URL for web content.
3. Enter a description for the content.
4. Click **Create** to return to the central Attachments window. The attachment date, description, name, type, and user name is displayed for tracking.

You can enter one or more attachments to support your product or solution campaigns, events, and sales leads.

Click the Description hyperlink to open the Attachment Details screen. This enables you to modify the attachment. For Attachments of type File, you can modify the file directly, and then upload the modified file. This will overwrite the previous version.

You can preview each of your attachments by clicking on the Attachment name. Oracle One-to-one Fulfillment - a foundation product – is used to fulfill electronic deliverables with attachments via email.

For electronic deliverables (category email):

You specify the content of an electronic deliverable for an Email body in the Email Content cue card entry for the deliverable. Use this to store corporate positioning statements, feature lists, benefits, or standard offering statements which can be used in multiple emails.

From the Email Content screen, select a delivery type of HTML or text.

You can select the content for the email from a URL or file. This populates the email body with a set of text you can modify. You can enter html or text content, or images. Note that the images must be http images. Embedding static local images is not supported.

You can also import an existing email block. This populates the email body with a set of text you can modify. or Enter text directly in the email body. Only the body of the email is specified. The sender, return to, subject line, and greeting text of the email is customized at the email blast level. The target group and relevant offers are specified at the email blast level as well.

You can preview the email content by clicking **Preview** before activating the email for campaign usage.

Email content can be referenced in one or more email schedules so the content need not be created per email blast.

Stocking Physical Deliverables

If you create a physical deliverable, you need to either:

- Stock the deliverable manually, or
- Associate the deliverable with Oracle Inventory.

Select the Inventory Options cue card entry and select to stock the deliverable manually or associate the deliverable with Oracle Inventory.

Option	Description
Stock Manually	Stock Manually. This can be useful for small deliverables which are mailed directly by the person receiving the request. If you stock the deliverable manually, enter the quantity of the deliverable you stock. These must be manually tracked and will not be tracked by Oracle Inventory.
Inventory Item	Inventory Item: You can add the deliverable to Oracle Inventory, or associate the deliverable with an existing item in inventory. Inventoried deliverables are handled like any other order for a part; ordered through Quoting and fulfilled through Order Management.

Attachments for physical deliverables are for collaboration only, and do not represent the deliverable content itself, which is physically stocked and fulfilled.

Entering or Editing Detailed Deliverable Information

Use this procedure to enter or edit information about a deliverable.

Prerequisites

An existing deliverable

Steps

1. Navigate to the Deliverable tab.

2. Click the link of the deliverable to view or edit it. If the desired deliverable is not displayed, search for it by changing the Saved Search or using QuickFind. The Deliverable Details page displays.
3. To create a new version of a deliverable, enter a new version number.

Note: Oracle Marketing Online does not maintain versions. A new version will overwrite the previous version.

4. Edit fields as desired.
5. If the deliverable includes electronic files, modify those files by selecting the Attachment item on the side panel menu and following the instructions for creating an attachment.
6. Fill in information in the other items on the side panel menus.

Guidelines

The list below includes all items on the side panel menus used for deliverables.

- Budgets: Used to request funds for the deliverable.
- Inventory and Kit: Used to create a kit and enter it into inventory.
- Attachments Costs
- Metrics
- Notes
- Tasks

Creating a Kit of Deliverables

You can bundle a set of physical, inventoried items OR a set of electronic deliverables (with attachments) to create a kit of related collateral for a given promotion.

Note: Do not mix delivery mediums in the same kit due for fulfillment purposes.

Each deliverable can be used in one or more kits, as long as an item is not a kit itself.

Use this procedure to collect a number of deliverables into a kit. The kit itself must be created as a deliverable first before adding other deliverables to it.

Prerequisites

A deliverable kit

Steps

1. Navigate to Deliverable > Deliverable.
2. Select a deliverable kit from the listings
3. Select Inventory and Kit from the side panel menu.
4. In the Kit section, select the deliverables that are a part of this kit:

- a. Select the name of a deliverable from the Name list of values.

When the deliverable is referenced, the entire kit is fulfilled. Note that the kit is not stored as a kit in Oracle Inventory. The kit is stored as a marketing entity in Oracle Marketing Online.

- b. Click **Update**.
 - c. Repeat this procedure for each deliverable in the kit.
5. Click **Update**.

For physical, inventoried kit items, if the kit is created and one piece of the kit is not in stock, any orders will be back ordered via Order Management and the kit will not be sent until all items are available. In that case, an order for individual Kit components can be selected instead of the entire Kit.

Deliverable Messages

Use the Message subtab to:

- [Remove a message from use](#)
- [View and edit a message](#)
- [Create a message](#)

Removing a Message From Use

Use this procedure to remove a marketing message from use.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Message tab.
2. Deselect the **Active** check box next to the message you wish to remove from use.
3. Click **Update**.

The message can no longer be used with marketing objects.

Viewing and Editing a Message

Use this procedure to view and edit a message.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Message tab.
2. Select the link for the desired message. The Message Details page appears.
3. Edit the details as appropriate.
4. Click **Update**.

Creating a Message

Use this procedure to create a message to be used with marketing objects.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Message tab.
2. Click **Create**. The Create Message page appears.
3. Enter the message name.
4. In the Effective Dates field, enter the dates this message is available.

5. Select the message type.
6. If desired, change the message owner.
7. Enter a description of the message.
8. Click **Create**. The Message Details page appears.
9. Fill in information in the various Side Panel Menu Item pages. Click an item in the Side Panel Menu to display the appropriate page. Entering information on an item's page will cause a checkmark to be displayed to the left of the item indicating that information has been entered on that page.

Guidelines:

The list below includes all side panel menu items, except General, available for messages. The General item is always the basic object information.

- Attachments
- Notes
- Products

The Execution Tab

Use the Execution tab to create and execute marketing campaigns targeted at customer segments on their storefronts. You can also create product recommendations and display them in iStore.

Help is available on:

- [Creating a universal posting](#)
- [Creating a rule-based posting](#)
- [Updating a universal posting](#)
- [Updating a rule-based posting](#)
- [Removing a universal or rule-based posting](#)
- [Registering a new site](#)
- [Registering a new page](#)
- [Registering a new location](#)
- [Registering a new style](#)

- [Registering a new placement](#)
- [Updating an existing placement](#)

Web Postings

A Web posting is an object used to define the personalized content that is dynamically selected and displayed to at run-time in a placement.

Creating a Universal Posting

The content returned by the posting to the visitor at runtime is dependent on the content type and the merchandising strategy selected by the Web merchandiser. Use the following procedure when you want to create a new posting to return some content.

Prerequisites

Content is created

Steps

1. Navigate to Postings > Universal Postings.
2. Click **Create Posting**.
3. Enter the name and description of the posting, as well as the following posting's attributes:
 - a. Status is Active by default
 - b. Select the content type
 - c. Enter the maximum number of items to be displayed
4. Select a merchandising strategy and provide the strategy's additional information:
 - a. Specific list of content items: add content items to the list
 - b. Predefined relationships: select the product context and the relationship
 - c. Inferred recommendations: select the recommendation engine and the recommendation method
 - d. Custom strategies: select the custom strategy to use
5. If applicable, select a product filter (default is No filter)

6. Select a Display Priority (default is No Display Priority)
7. View the list of placements the posting is assigned to (empty the first time).
8. Optionally, assign the posting to one or more placements - see the placements chapter for more details.

Creating a Rule-based Posting

A Web merchandiser wants to create a new rule-based posting. The content returned by the posting to the visitor at runtime is dependent on the content type, the targeting rules and their associated merchandising strategy.

The Web merchandiser wants to create a new posting targeting different visitors with different strategies.

Prerequisites

Content is created

Steps

1. Navigate to Postings > Rule-based Postings.
2. Click **Create Posting**.
3. Enter name and description of the posting, as well as the following posting's attributes:
 - a. Status is Active by default
 - b. Select the content type
 - c. Enter the maximum number of items to be displayed
4. Click **Create Rule** button to create a new targeting rule
5. Enter the rule name description.
6. Modify the defaulted rule priority.
7. Enter the rules conditions:
 - a. Visitor Status: select a status
 - b. Shopping Cart Total: select an operator and an amount to compare to
 - c. Customer List and Segments: add one or more marketing list(s) or segments
 - d. Custom rules: select a value to test.

8. Select a merchandising strategy and provide the strategy's additional information:
 - a. Specific list of content items: add content items to the list
 - b. Predefined relationships: select the product context and the relationship
 - c. Inferred recommendations: select the recommendation engine and the recommendation method
 - d. Custom strategies: select the custom strategy to use
9. If applicable, select a product filter (default is No Filter)
10. Select a Display Priority (default is No Display Priority)
11. Eventually, create additional rules following the same process from step 3.
12. View the list of placements the posting is assigned to (empty the first time).
13. Optionally, assign the posting to one or more placements - see the placements chapter for more details.

Updating a Universal Posting

A Web merchandiser wants to update an existing universal posting. For example, the Web merchandiser wants to modify the list of campaigns that are returned by the posting, or wants to modify some parameters of the posting's merchandising strategy.

Use this procedure to:

- Change the status of the posting
- Modify the number of items returned by the posting
- Modify the parameters of the merchandising strategy
- Re-prioritize the content

Prerequisites

- The posting already exists
- If content items are added to a specific list of content items, the new items have been created.
- If you want to change the status from Active to Inactive, the posting has to be unassigned from the placements that are currently using it.

Steps

1. Navigate to Postings > Universal Postings.
2. Select the posting to update.

The following posting's attribute can be modified:

- Name
 - Description
 - Status
 - Maximum number of items to be displayed
 - Merchandising strategy and its parameters
 - Product filter when applicable
 - Display priority
3. Within the same flow, the user may also modify the list of placements the posting is assigned to, by adding or removing placements. See the placements chapter for more details.

Updating a Rule-based Posting

Using this procedure to update an existing rule-based posting. For example, if you want to modify a targeting rule part of the posting, or parameters of one of the rules' merchandising strategy.

Prerequisites

- The posting already exists.
- If content items are added to a specific list of content items, the new items have been created.
- If you want to change the status from Active to Inactive, the posting must be unassigned from the placements that are currently using it.

Steps

1. Navigate to Postings > Rule-based Postings.
2. Select the posting to update.
3. Modify any of the following fields, as needed:
 - Name

- Description
 - Status
 - Maximum number of items to be displayed
4. Create or modify your rules, as needed. The fields you can modify include:
 - Rule name, description, and rule priority
 - Conditions
 - Strategy type or the strategy parameters
 5. Within the same flow, you may also modify the list of placements the posting is assigned to, by adding or removing placements. See the placements chapter for more details.

Removing a Universal or Rule-based Posting

Use this procedure when you want to remove a posting no longer in use. The system automatically validates that the posting is not assigned to any placement.

Prerequisites

The posting is not assigned to any placements

Steps

1. Navigate to Postings > Rule-based Posting or Universal Postings, as desired.
2. Select the posting to remove.
3. Click **Remove**.

Web Placements

A Web placement is a logical representation for a physical space on an application page, where some content (returned by a posting) is displayed. It is identified by a site, a page, a location, and eventually some page parameters.

Registering a New Site

Use this procedure to use eMerchandising placements and postings on a new CRM application or another Web site.

Prerequisites

The site does not yet exist.

Steps

1. Navigate to Administration > Placement > Sites.
2. Add a new site.
3. Enter the site name and description.

Registering a New Page

Use this procedure to use eMerchandising placements and postings on a new page of an existing site.

Prerequisites

- The site is registered.
- The page has not been registered yet.

Steps

1. Navigate to Administration > Placement > Pages.
2. Select a site.
3. If the site is iStore, add a new page by selecting from the list of templates. If not, register a new page by entering a name and a description.

Registering a New Location

Refer to the *Oracle Marketing Online Implementation Guide* for information on registering a new location.

Registering a New Style

Use this procedure to register a new style for use in placements.

Prerequisites

An existing XSL stylesheet.

Steps

1. Navigate to Administration > Marketing > Execution > Sites.

2. Click **Create**.
3. Create a new style.
4. Select the content type.
5. Enter a style name and description.
6. Upload the XSL file.

Registering a New Placement

Use this procedure to add a new placement.

Prerequisites

An existing site, page and location.

Steps

1. Navigate to Web Placements.
2. Select the site and the page on which to add the placement.
3. Add a new placement
4. Select the location, specialty store, and top section, as applicable.
5. If it is not already there, the API call that should be added to the physical page can be copied from the user interface.

Updating an Existing Placement

Use this procedure to update an existing placement. With the updating feature you can:

- Change the assigned posting
- Change the display style
- Activated or de-activated the placement
- Tracking the events on the placement

Prerequisites

A defined placement

Steps

1. Navigate to Web Placements.
2. Select the site and the page.
3. Select the placement from the list and update it.

You can modify the following placement attributes:

- Assigned posting
- Display style
- Active flag
- Track events flag

The Budget Tab

Use the Budget tab to set up funding for campaign, offers, events, and deliverables. To draw funds from an existing budget, use the Budget item on the side panel menu in the individual campaign, event, or deliverable.

Help is available on:

- [Viewing budgets](#)
- [Creating a budget](#)
- [Entering and editing budget information](#)
- [Reviewing budget expenditures](#)
- [Request the transfer of funds from one budget to another](#)

Viewing Budgets

Use this procedure to view the details of existing budgets.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Budget tab.

Displayed here is a list of budgets to which you have access authorization. The budgets appear in an hierarchical format, as indicated by a folder and + icon. By

clicking on any of the budget with a hierarchy, all associated budget appear, in a tree format. With this method you can drill down to the lowest level of any budget.

2. If the desired budget is not among those displayed in the list, select an alternate Saved Search, or run a query using QuickFind and Advanced Search.
3. Click the desired budget to view or edit.

The Budget Details page appears.

Creating a Budget

Use this procedure to create a new budget. Following is a list of budget field definitions for your reference. Unless otherwise noted, the system requires input in each field prior to the accepting the Create command.

Field	Definition
Name	User defined budget name.
Number	User defined/system generated budget number. When you created a parent budget, you must assign a number to that budget. The system will generate budget numbers for all subsequent child budgets. This is an optional entry.
Business Unit	The business unit within your organization, to which you want to attach this budget. The LOV includes all business units defined on the Administration tab. This is an optional entry.
Parent Name	Name of reporting budget
Type	The type of budget being created. LOV include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Fixed ■ Fully accrued For information on these budget types, see the section titled Fixed and Accrual Budgets found earlier in this guide.
Category	The category in which the budget falls. Examples includes: Advertising, Global Programs, Marketing, Research and Development
Budget Amount	The starting value of a fixed budget. If the budget is fully accrued, the starting value is zero.

Field	Definition
Currency	The operating currency used for this budget. The LOV includes all system supported currencies.
Holdback Amount	The portion of the budget funds you intend to exclude from the allocation process. This is an optional entry.
Owner	Name of the owner of this budget. The default owner name is the name of the sign-on user.
Start Period	The the beginning of the active period of time in which you earn funds for a given promotion, deal, event, and so on. This is an optional entry.
End Period	The end of the active period of time on which you earn funds for a given promotion, deal, event, and so on. This is an optional entry.
Start Date	The date the budget becomes active.
End Date	The date the budget closes to further activity. This is an optional entry.
Description	A detailed description of the budget. This is an optional entry.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Budget tab.
2. Click **Create**.
The Create Budget subtab appears.
3. Select a Setup Type from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the budget name.
5. Enter a unique identification number. If you choose not to input a number, the system generates one for you.

6. If this budget is subordinate to another budget, click **Go** in the Parent Name field and from the list of values select the parent budget.

Otherwise, skip this step.

7. Select a budget type from the drop-down list.
8. Select a category from the drop-down list.
9. Enter a Budget Amount, as a whole number. Do not use spaces, commas or decimal points.
10. Select your currency type from the drop-down list.
11. If desired, enter an amount you would like to be held in reserve.
12. Enter the name of the budget owner.

If your name automatically appears in the field, and you are not the owner, click **Go** and use the list of values to select the actual budget owner.

13. Enter the start and end dates for which the budget is active.
14. Click **Create**.

The Budget Details page appears.

Entering and Editing Budget Information

Use this procedure to enter or edit budget details.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Budget tab.
2. Click the desired budget to display the Budget Details page.
3. Complete all required input.

You can edit information in any field on this page. The section titled [Creating a Budget](#) contains a table describing each of the fields. The guidelines section describes each side panel menu item.

4. Click **Update**.

Guidelines:

The list below includes all items on the Budget's side panel menu.

- Allocation
- Checkbook
- Market
- Notes
- Products
- Team

Reviewing Budget Expenditures

Use this procedure to review budget expenditures and balances.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Checkbook item on the side panel menu:
 - a. Navigate to the Budget Tab.
 - b. Click the desired budget to display its Budget Details page.
 - c. Click the Checkbook item on the side panel menu.
2. To view further details on the total, planned, committed, earned, or paid amounts, click the currency amounts in those lines. Each of these currency amounts is linked to a report which appears in a separate page.

Requesting Transfer of Funds from One Budget to Another

Budget creators can use this procedure to request the transfer of funds from one budget to another.

Prerequisites

Permission to create budgets. Both the granting budget and the receiving budget must have the status of active for the transfer to take place.

Steps

1. Navigate to the Budget > Budget Transfer.
2. The Budget Transfer page appears.
3. Click **Go** in the Name field and use the list of values (LOV) to select the budget to transfer funds from.
The owner and remaining funds appear for the budget you selected.
4. In Requested Amount, enter the amount of the budget to transfer.
5. In Transfer To, click **Go** and use the LOV to select the budget the funds are going to.
6. Click **Transfer**.
7. If you are the owner of both budgets, then the budget amount is transferred automatically:
 - a. The Budget Transfer confirmation page appears.
 - b. Click **OK**.
8. If you are not the owner of the budget, your request is submitted to the budget owner and your supervisor for approval. The amount is transferred on their approval.

The Claim Tab

Use the features of the Claim tab to manage the resolution of claims and deductions.

Help is available on:

- [Manually Creating a Claim](#)
- [Populating Claim Lines](#)
- [Associate Claims](#)
- [Reviewing Claim Sources](#)
- [Creating Tasks](#)
- [Splitting a Claim](#)
- [Claim History](#)

You can obtain general information about claims in the [Claims](#) section of this book.

When you initially choose a claim, that claim and its information remain the focus of all functionality accessed on each item on the side panel menu. At any time you can save your current work (clicking create or update) click the Claims subtab to select a different claim to work on.

You can find information on Attachments and Notes in Understanding Oracle Marketing Online section of this manual.

Guidelines:

The list below includes all items on the Claim tab's side panel menu.

- General
- Lines
- Source
- Tasks
- Split
- Attachments
- History

Manually Creating a Claim

Use this procedure to create a claim.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claims subtab.
2. Click **Create**.

The Create Claim page appears.

General Area

1. Select a Setup Type from the drop-down list.

Important Note: The system automatically generates a unique claim number. It will appear once you complete the input fields and click the Create button.

2. Enter a Claim Type. Click **Go** to select a Claim type from the current listing.
3. Enter a Reason. Click **Go** to select a Reason code from the current listing.
4. Enter the customer's name. Click **Go** to select a customer from the current customer list.
5. Enter an Owner (person responsible for the settlement of the claim). Click **Go** to select an owner from the current Owner list.
6. Select a Status from the drop down list choices.
7. Enter a Duplicate claim. Click **Go** to select a claim from the current claim list. This is an optional entry.

Customer Area

Data entry is optional in each of the fields in this area of the page.

1. Enter the customer's billing site. Click **Go** to select a site from the current billing list. This is an optional entry.
2. Enter the customer's Ship To address. Click **Go** to select an address from the current shipping address list.
3. Enter a customer Contact. Click **Go** to select a contact from the current contact list.
4. Enter a Broker. Click **Go** to select a broker from the current broker list.
5. Enter a customer Contact. Click **Go** to select a contact from the current contact list.
6. Enter a Reference. (Example: Customer Debit Memo number)
7. Click the Calendar button and select the date of the Reference.

Amount Area

1. Select an Exchange Type from drop-down list choices.
2. Click the Calendar button and select the date of the currency exchange.

3. Enter the Exchange Rate used for amount entered to convert to your standard currency.
4. Select your currency type from the drop-down list choices.
5. Enter the currency amount.
6. Click **Create**.

The Claim Details page appears.

Populating Claim Lines

Use this procedure to list all claims against a specific deal.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claims subtab.
2. From the displayed list, click the claim on which you want to work.
3. Click the side panel menu item **Lines**.
The Claim Lines page appears.
4. Choose a Claim Type from the drop-down menu.
5. Enter the customer's name. Click **Go** to select a customer from the current customer list. When using Go, you must enter a set minimum (quantity determined by your installation set-up) of the first characters of the customer's name, and then press Go, to begin the search.
6. Enter a Unit of Measure (UOM) for the product for the applicable claim. Click **Go** to select a UOM from a list of available units of measure.
7. Enter the quantity of the product (based on UOM) for the claim.
8. Enter the price per unit (in your functional currency) of the product for the claim.
9. Click the Detail box to review the details of the claim. If you do not want to review the claim details, skip this step.
10. Click the Associate Earnings icon (flashlight) to created the association between earnings and this claim line.

- a. Input all available association information.
For details on entering this data, see the sub-section Associate Claims, found later in this chapter.
 - b. Click Update to save your input.
 - c. Click the Back button on your browser to navigate to the Claim Lines page.
11. Repeat steps 4 through 10 until you have added all desired lines.
 12. Click **Update** to update your changes to the Claim Lines pages or **Restore** to restore to its original status upon entering this page.

Associate Claims

Use Associate Claims, located on the Lines page, to associate a claim line with earnings accrued in the checkbook. This is mandatory for a promotional claim type. Claim lines are not associated with a specific deduction but can be associated with earnings.

This is not a required function.

Prerequisites

You must first create a line deduction on the Claim Lines page. It is to this deduction that you create associations.

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim Lines Page.
2. Click the Associate Earnings icon, located at the end of the respective claim line.
3. Enter a Relationship from the drop-down list choices.
4. Enter an Activity Type from the drop-down list choices.
5. Enter a schedule. Click **Go** to select a schedule from the current schedule list.
6. Enter a Document Class from the drop-down list.
7. Enter the Accounted Amount, in your relevant currency.
8. Enter a Related Customer. Click **Go** to select a customer from the current customer list.
9. Enter an Activity. Click **Go** to select an activity from the current activity list.
10. Enter an Offer. Click **Go** to select an offer from the current offers list.

11. Enter a Document Number. Click **Go** to select a number from the current document number list.
12. Click the Automatic Association of Total Amount box to have the system automatically select as many lines (in the current listed order) as required to equal the claim amount.

To manually choose the lines to associated with the claim amount total, deselect this box.

This check box works as a toggle.

13. Click **Update to store the information**.
14. Click **Search** to search for associated earnings, based on your data entry.

Reviewing Claim Sources

Use this page to Review all available claim source data. Source data is the check, amount and date the original deduction was taken on.

Creating Tasks

Use this procedure to create tasks associated with resolving a specific claim.

Note: This is in addition to the default tasks created by Actions.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claims subtab.
2. From the displayed list, click the claim on which you want to work.
3. Click the side panel menu item **Tasks**.
The Claim Task page appears.
4. Enter a task priority from the drop-down list choices. This is an optional step. The default priority is Medium.

5. Enter a task status from the drop-down list choices. This is an optional step. The default status is Accepted.
6. Click **Create**.
7. Enter a Name for the task.
8. Enter a Priority for the task from the drop-down list choices.
9. Enter a Type from the drop-down list choices.
10. Enter a Status from the drop-down list choices.
11. Enter a Planned Due Date. Click **Go** to select a date from the current schedule list.
12. Click the Calendar button and select the claim's Planned Due Date.
13. Enter an Assignee. Click **Go** to select an assignee from the current list of available personnel.
14. Repeat steps 7 through 13 to add two more tasks.
15. Click **Create**. The system stores the task information and creates three new task lines, if you populated the initial three.
16. Repeat steps 7 through 13 to add up to three more tasks.
17. Click **Update** to store the information, or **Restore** to remove all of your current changes. You can also use the restore option on a line-by-line basis.

Note: After the initial creation of tasks, and Update button appears rather than the Create button. To generate an additional three lines, populate all available lines and click Update.

Splitting a Claim

Use this procedure to split a claim between two or more deductions.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claims subtab.
2. From the displayed list, click the claim on which you want to work.

3. Click the side panel menu item **Split**.
The Split Claim page appears.
4. Enter a claim number on the first line of the input fields. This is an optional entry.
5. Enter the claim type. Click **Go** to select a type from the current Claim Type list.
6. Enter the Reason for the claim. Click **Go** to select a Reason from the current Reason list.
7. Enter the status of the claim.
8. Enter the amount of the claim.
9. Enter the line amount. Click **Go** to select an amount from the current Line Amount list. This is an optional entry.
10. Repeat steps 4 through 9 to add two more lines for splits.
11. Click **Create**. The system stores the split information and creates three new split lines, if you populated the initial three.
12. Repeat steps 4 through 9 to add up to three more split lines.
13. Click **Update** to store the information, or **Restore** to remove all of your current changes.

Note: After the initial creation of splits, and Update button appears rather than the Create button. To generate an additional three lines, populate all available lines and click Update.

Claim History

Use this procedure to review the history of a claim.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claims subtab.
2. From the displayed list, click the claim on which you want to work.

3. Click the side panel menu item **History**.
The Claim Detail page for History appears. Listed are all historical events associated with the specified claim.
4. Click the Event name (located in the Events column) to view detailed information on that specific event.
5. Click the Back button on your browser to return to the Claim Detail page for Claim History.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 to view the history of any listed claim.

The Analytics Tab

Use this tab to create predictive models of customer and/or prospect behavior based on historical data, and use these models to predict which segments to target in future campaigns. In this tab you can create and manage models and scoring runs. You can also:

- Create a list of customers and/or prospects that are most likely to respond to your email, telemarketing, or direct mail campaign.
- Create a list of individuals or businesses that are most likely to defect from your organization, so you can try to prevent them from defecting and convert them to loyal customers.

Help is available on the following tasks:

- [Creating a List of Customers Most Likely to Respond to a Campaign](#)
- [Generating a List of Customers Most Likely to Close their Accounts](#)
- [Creating a Model](#)
- [Viewing a Model](#)
- [Entering and Modifying Model Details](#)
- [Building a Response Model](#)
- [Building a Loyalty/Retention Model](#)
- [Evaluating Model Results](#)
- [Copying a Model](#)
- [Scoring the Target Population with a Model](#)
- [Creating a Scoring Run](#)

- [Viewing a Scoring Run](#)
- [Entering and Modifying Scoring Run Details](#)
- [Selecting the Target Population and Scheduling a Scoring Run](#)
- [Evaluating Scoring Run Results](#)
- [Generating a Scoring Run List](#)
- [Copying a Scoring Run](#)

For an understanding of the Analytics tab and building models to predict future customer and/or prospect behavior see [Models](#), found in the Understanding Oracle Marketing Online section of this guide.

Creating a List of Customers Most Likely to Respond to a Campaign

Use this procedure to create a list of customers and/or prospects who are most likely to respond to a telemarketing, email, or a direct mail campaign. This procedure gives you a general outline of the steps involved. Follow the links in each step for details.

Prerequisites

You must have a population of customers and/or prospects in your database who have been targeted by a similar campaign in the past:

- If you wish to predict who will respond to a telemarketing campaign, you must have information from a past telemarketing campaign.
- If you wish to predict who will respond to a direct mail campaign, then you must have data on a past direct mail campaign.
- If you wish to predict who will respond to an email campaign, then you must have data on a past email campaign.

You must have data on the demographics and other characteristics of these individuals as well as information on which individuals responded. For more information, see [Models](#), found in the Understanding section of this guide.

Steps

1. From the Analytics tab, click **Create** and enter the basic information about the model.
2. Build a response model based on historical data you have in your database.

3. Evaluate your model by examining the generated reports.
4. Navigate to Analytics > Scoring Run and enter the basic scoring run information.
5. Select the target population and schedule the scoring run.
6. Select those segments of the target population most likely to respond and create the list.

Creating a List of Customers Most Likely to Close Their Accounts

Use this procedure to create a list of customers who are most likely to defect from your organization. This procedure gives you a general outline of the steps involved. Follow the links in each step for details.

Prerequisites

You must have data on the demographics and other characteristics of customers as well as information on which individuals or businesses recently closed their accounts. See [Understanding Models](#) for more details.

Steps

1. In the Analytics tab, click **Create** and enter the basic information about the model.
2. Build a loyalty /retention model based on historical data you have in your database.
3. Evaluate your model by examining the generated reports.
4. Navigate to Analytics > Scoring Run and enter the basic scoring run information.
5. Select the target population and schedule the scoring run.
6. Select those segments of the target population most likely to defect and create the list.

Creating a Model

Use this procedure to enter the basic information about any new response or loyalty/retention model.

Prerequisites

Information on the characteristics and responses of a population of customers and/or prospects who have exhibited the target behavior in the past.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Models.
2. Click **Create**. The Create Model window appears.
3. Enter a name for your model.
4. Select the model type from the Type drop-down list. Your options include:
 - Direct Mail Response
 - Email response
 - Loyalty/Retention
 - Telemarketing Response
5. Select a Target Audience: Persons or Organization Contacts. This selection determines which set of customer attributes the application uses to build your model. See Customer Attributes Used for Model Building in the *Oracle Marketing Online Implementation Guide* for a complete list.
6. If you wish to limit the availability of this model, enter an expiration date.
7. If you are not the person who is to receive notifications about the status of this model, then click **Go** in the Owner field and use the List of Values to enter a different individual.
8. Enter an optional description.
9. Click **Create**.

The Model Details window appears. You are now ready to build a response model or build a loyalty /retention model.

Viewing a Model

Use this procedure to view a model.

Prerequisites

You can only view models you have already created.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Models.
2. Locate the desired model using the provided list, by changing the view and performing a search, or by using QuickFind.
3. Click the model Name link.

The Model Details window appears. You can now view or modify information about the model.

Entering and Modifying Model Details

Use this procedure to modify a model in development or to modify an existing model for a rerun.

Prerequisites

If you are creating a new model, you must enter the basic information about a model first.

Steps

1. Display the model. The Model Details window appears.

You can modify the following model information:

Field	Description
Name	Enter a name for the model.
Status	<p>Model status tracks a model's readiness and availability to others in your organization and controls how you can modify it. How you can modify a model's status depends on the status of the model itself.</p> <p>Until you complete the model building process, for example, a new model will have the status of Draft. You can change this status to Archived if you wish to stop this model from being developed further. A status of Archived locks all of the fields and makes it impossible for anyone to modify or copy this model. For detailed information on each model status see Understanding Model Status.</p>
Expiration Date	The model is unavailable for use after this date. If the model has already expired, then removing the date entry or entering a future date allows you to make the model available again.

Field	Description
Owner	If you wish to have a different person notified about the status of this model, then click Go in the Owner field and enter a different individual
Description	Enter relevant description of the model.

2. Click **Update** to save your changes or in the alternate, click **Restore** to discard them.

For information on how to copy this model refer to the section titled [Copying a Model](#), found later in this guide.

3. If you are building a new model and wish to define the training data set, or rerun an existing model on a new training data set, then select the Training Data checklist attribute and follow the procedures outlined in [Building a Response Model](#) or [Building a Loyalty/Retention Model](#), as appropriate
4. To view results information on a model already built, refer to the two reports under the Results checklist attribute:
 - Lift Chart
 - Performance Matrix
5. To attach files to the model, select the Attachments checklist attribute.
6. To review or add notes to the model, select the Notes checklist attribute.
7. To review or assign tasks to this model, select the tasks checklist attribute.
8. To enable individuals in your organization to gain access to the model, select Team Attribute, and enter the information.

Building a Response Model

Use this procedure to specify the campaign schedule the application will use to build a response model and to schedule the model build.

Prerequisites

- You must know the name of the campaign (and the name of the campaign schedule) that contains the historical data the application will use to build your model. The population targeted by this historical campaign must have trackable similarities to the population you wish to target with your new campaign.

- You must set up the basic information about the response model before you can build it. This setup is described in *Creating a Model and Entering and Modifying Model Details*.
- You must have both responders and non-responders in your training selection.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Models.
2. Display the model.
3. Select the Training Data checklist attribute. The Model Details - Training Data window appears.
4. Click **Go** in the Campaign Name field and use the LOV to select the desired campaign for your training model.
5. Click **Go** in the Campaign Schedule field and use the LOV to select the campaign schedule.

Note: You can use only one campaign name and one campaign schedule name to train a response model

6. To restrict the size of the training population, make entries in the Selection Method and Record Count regions of the window.
 - a. To select records starting from top to bottom, select the **Top Down** radio button.

To select records starting from the top down until some maximum number is reached, enter the maximum number in the appropriate Record Count field.
 - b. To have the application select every Nth row, select the **Every** radio button and enter the number of rows. For example, entering a 5 results in the application selecting every 5th record.

Similar to above, to have this pattern applied until some maximum number is reached, enter the maximum number in the appropriate Record Count field.
 - c. To have the application to select a percentage of the records at random, select the **Random** radio button and enter the percentage.

- d. Enter a minimum number of records you wish to use in the Minimum field. This ensures that the record selection criteria do not make the training population too small. If using the selection rule results in a population that is below the minimum number, then the application will not build the model.
- e. Enter a maximum number of records you wish to use in the Maximum field.

Note: The system applies the Selection Method criteria before the Record Count criteria. However, Record Count criteria take precedence if there is a conflict. For example, if you specify to select 50% of a set of 200,000 records at random (which would equal 100,000 records) **and** a Maximum of 85,000 records, then the application will select only 85,000 records at random for your training data set.

- 7. Click **Preview** to preview the training selections you have made. The application displays information about the selected population. This includes the number of responses to the selected campaign/schedule.

Reminder: To build a response model, you must have both responders and non-responders in your training selection.

- 8. Click **Update** to save or **Restore** to discard your changes.
- 9. Select the Build Checklist attribute. The Model Details - Build Schedule window appears.
 - a. To schedule the model build immediately, select the appropriate radio button.
 - b. To schedule the model building process for an alternate date and time, enter the date and time and select the desired time zone from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Update** to build the model according to your specifications or **Restore** to discard your changes.

The system notifies the designated owner of the model (usually the creator) when the application finishes building the model. Additionally, you can check the status field to ascertain when the model building is complete. A status of Available indicates that the model is ready for you to evaluate its effectiveness and for scoring the target population.

References

Models

Creating a Model

Entering and Modifying Model Details

Building a Loyalty/Retention Model

Use this procedure to specify the population of customers the application will use to build a loyalty/retention model and to schedule the model build.

Prerequisites

- The source you use for the training population must already exist. The population you select for building your model must be as similar as possible to the population you wish to target with your campaign aimed at prevention of customer defection, and it must include demographic, transaction history and account status information.
- You must set up the basic information about the loyalty/retention model before you can build it. This setup is described in *Creating a Model* and *Entering and Modifying Model Details*.
- To build this type of model, you must have customer records with open accounts as well as those with closed accounts in your training selection.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Models.
2. Display the desired model.
3. Select the Training Data checklist attribute. The Model Details - Training Data window appears.
4. To train your model from a single source (such as a workbook or a segment), in the Selection region:
 - a. Select the type of source, using the Type drop-down LOV.

is below the minimum number, then the application will not build the model.

- e. Enter a maximum number of records you wish to use in the Maximum field.

Note: The system applies the Selection Method criteria before the Record Count criteria. However, Record Count criteria take precedence if there is a conflict. For example, if you specify to select 50% of a set of 200,000 records at random (which would equal 100,000 records) and a Maximum of 85,000 records, then the application will select only 85,000 records at random for your training data set.

7. Click **Preview** to preview the training selections you have made. The application displays information about the selected population. This includes the number of individuals who have closed their accounts.

Reminder: To build a loyalty/retention model, you must have customer records with open accounts as well as those with closed accounts in your training selection.

8. Click **Update** to save your changes or in the alternate, click **Restore** to discard them.
9. Select the Build Checklist attribute. The Model Details - Build Schedule window appears.
 - a. To schedule the model build immediately, select the appropriate radio button.
 - b. To schedule the model building process for an alternate date and time, enter the date and time and select the desired time zone from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Update** to build the model according to your specifications, or **Restore** to discard your changes.

The system notifies the designated owner of the model (usually the creator) when the application finishes building the model. Additionally, you can check

the status field to ascertain when the model building is complete. A status of Available indicates that the model is ready for you to evaluate its effectiveness and for scoring the target population.

References

Models

Evaluating Model Results

Use this procedure to evaluate the accuracy and the benefits of the model you have built.

Prerequisites

The model must have a status of Available before you can examine the results of the build.

Steps

1. Display the model you wish to evaluate.
2. Examine the two reports under the Results checklist attribute:
 - a. **Lift Chart:** This report gives you a graphical representation of the benefits of using the model over contacting customers at random. For more information, see [About the Lift Chart Report](#).
 - b. **Performance Matrix:** This report tells you the model's accuracy for making predictions. For more information, see [About the Performance Matrix Report](#).

Copying a Model

There are two ways to copy a model: from the Analytics > Models subtab, and from the Model Details window. Use the first procedure to copy any model. Use the second procedure to copy the model currently in view.

Prerequisites

You cannot copy models with a status of Archived.

Steps for the first procedure

1. Navigate to Analytics > Models.

2. Click **Copy**. The Copy Model window appears.
3. Click **Go** in the Source Model Name field and use the LOV to select the model you wish to copy.
4. Enter a name for your new model.
5. To have a person other than yourself receive notifications about the new model, click **Go** in the Owner field and use the LOV to select that individual.
6. Enter an optional description for the new model.
7. Select the checkboxes corresponding to the information you wish to copy to the new model:
 - a. **Main**: General model information entered in the Model Details window for the source model.
 - b. **Training Data**: Setup of the existing population of customers and/or prospects used for training the source model.
 - c. **Attachments**: All files attached to the source model (if any).
 - d. **Notes**: All notes created for the source model (if any).
 - e. **Tasks**: All tasks assigned for the source model (if any).
 - f. **Team**: Access to the source model by members of your organization.
8. Click **Copy** to finish copying the source model.
9. Click **Restore** to discard your current settings.

The new model appears in the list of models on the Analytics > Models subtab.

Steps for the second procedure

1. Navigate to Analytics > Models.
 1. Click **Copy** on the Model Details window while viewing details of the model you want to copy.

The Copy Model window appears. The source model information is automatically displayed.
 2. Enter a name for your new model.
 3. To specify that an individual other than yourself receive notifications about the new model, click **Go** in the Owner field and use the LOV to select that individual.

4. Enter an optional description for the new model.
5. Select the checkboxes corresponding to the information you wish to copy to the new model:
 - a. **Main:** General model information entered in the Model Details window for the source model.
 - b. **Training Data:** Setup of the existing population of customers and/or prospects used for training the source model.
 - c. **Attachments:** All files attached to the source model (if any).
 - d. **Notes:** All notes created for the source model (if any).
 - e. **Tasks:** All tasks assigned for the source model (if any).
 - f. **Team:** Access to the source model by members of your organization.
6. Click **Copy** to copy or **Restore** to discard changes.

The new model appears in the list of models on the Analytics > Models subtab.

Guidelines

- Copying models with a status of draft, scheduled, unscheduled, or building creates a new model with a status of draft.
- Copying models with a status of available or expired creates a new model with a status of available.

References

Model Status

Scoring the Target Population with a Model

Use this procedure to score a population of customers and/or prospects using a model you have built. Scoring uses a built predictive model to predict which segments of the target population are most likely to exhibit the target behavior. For a response model, these are the individuals who are most likely to respond. For a loyalty/retention model, these are the customers most likely to defect from your organization. After scoring is complete, you will be able to include the segments with different probabilities of exhibiting the target behavior in a list that you can use for your future campaigns.

Prerequisites

The model must be created and built.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Scoring Runs.
2. Enter basic scoring run information.
3. Select the target population and schedule a scoring run.
4. Select the desired segments you wish to target in your follow-up campaign, and generate the list.

Creating a Scoring Run

Use this procedure to setup a scoring run. Scoring is the process of using modeling results to predict which segments of the target population are most likely to exhibit the target behavior, such as response or defection.

Prerequisites

You must first create and build the model you wish to use for scoring.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Scoring Runs.
2. Click **Create**. The Create Scoring Run window appears.
3. Enter a name for your scoring run.
4. Click **Go** and use the Model Name LOV to select the model you wish to use for scoring.
5. To specify that an individual other than yourself receive notifications about the new model, click **Go** in the Owner field and use the LOV to select that individual.
6. Enter an optional description.
7. Click **Create**. The Scoring Run Details window appears. You are now ready to select the target population and schedule a scoring run.

If you wish to discard your changes prior to creating the scoring run, click **Clear**.

Viewing a Scoring Run

Use this procedure to view a scoring run.

Prerequisites

You can only view scoring runs you have already created.

Steps

1. Navigate to Analytics > Scoring Runs.
2. Locate the desired scoring run using the provided list, by changing the view and performing a search, or by using QuickFind.
3. Click the scoring run name link. The Scoring Run Details window appears. You can now view or modify information about the scoring run.

Entering and Modifying Scoring Run Details

Use this procedure to enter and edit the information for a scoring run.

Prerequisites

If you are creating a new scoring run, you must enter the basic information about the scoring run first.

Steps

1. Display the scoring run. The Scoring Run Details window appears. You can modify the following basic scoring run information:

Field	Description
Run Name	The name of the scoring run
Status	The status of your scoring run restricts how you can modify it.
Owner	If you wish to have a different person notified about this scoring run, then click Go in the Owner field and select a different individual.
Description	A brief description of the scoring run

2. Click **Update** to save your changes, or in the alternate, click **Restore** to discard your changes.

For information on how to copy this scoring run, refer to the section titled [Copying a Scoring Run](#) found later in this guide.

3. To score the target population, choose the Selections checklist attribute and follow the procedures in [Selecting the Target Population and Scheduling a Scoring Run](#).
4. If the scoring run has a status of completed and you wish to see the results, select the Results checklist attribute.
5. To attach files to the scoring run, select the Attachments checklist attribute.
6. To review or add notes to the scoring run, select the Notes checklist attribute.
7. To review or assign tasks to this scoring run, select the Tasks checklist attribute.
8. To enable individuals in your organization to gain access to the scoring run, then select the Team attribute and enter the required information.

Selecting the Target Population and Scheduling a Scoring Run

Use this procedure to select the target population you wish to score and to schedule the scoring run.

Prerequisites

You must create the scoring run first by entering basic information about it.

Steps

1. Display the scoring run.
2. Choose the Selections checklist attribute. The Scoring Run Details - Selections window appears.
3. To score a target population from a single source such as a workbook or a segment, from the Selection region:
 - a. Select the type of source using the Type drop-down list.
 - b. Click **Go** in the Name field and use the LOV to enter the name of the source you wish to use.
4. To create the target population from multiple sources, enter each source on a separate line:
 - a. Select the source type using the Type drop-down list.

Note: The system applies the Selection Method criteria before the Record Count criteria. However, Record Count criteria take precedence if there is a conflict. For example, if you specify to select 50% of a set of 200,000 records at random (which would equal 100,000 records) **and** a Maximum of 85,000 records, then the application will select only 85,000 records at random for your training data set.

6. Click **Preview** to preview the training selections you have made. The application displays information about the selected population.
7. Click **Update** to save your changes or in the alternate, click **Restore** to discard them.
8. Select the Score checklist attribute. The Scoring Run Details - Score Schedule window appears.
 - a. To score the target population immediately, select the appropriate radio button.
 - b. To schedule the scoring run process for an alternate date and time, enter the date and time and select the desired time zone from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Update** to score according to your specifications or in the alternate, click **Restore** to discard your changes.

The system notifies the designated owner of the scoring run (usually the creator) when the application finishes the scoring process. Additionally, you can check the status field to ascertain when the scoring run is complete. A status of Available indicates that the scoring run is ready for you to evaluate and generate the list for your follow-up campaign.

References

Scoring a Target Population with Your Model

Evaluating Scoring Run Results

Use this procedure to evaluate the results of your scoring run.

Prerequisites

The scoring run must have a status of Completed.

Steps

1. Display the scoring run.
2. Select the Results checklist attribute.

The Scoring Run Details - Results window opens displaying the results of your scoring run in a table. The application has sorted up the target population into ten segments, called deciles, each with different predicted probabilities of exhibiting the target behavior. For the response model, these segments are grouped based on the likelihood of people responding to your campaign. For the loyalty/retention model, these segments are based on the probabilities that customers belonging to these segments will defect from your organization.

3. After you decide which scored segments you wish to target, you are ready to generate the list for your follow-up campaign.

References

Scoring Run Results

Scoring Run Status

Generating Lists based on Scoring Run Results

Use this procedure to generate a list based on the results of your scoring run.

Prerequisites

The scoring run must have a status of Completed.

Steps

1. Display the scoring run.
2. Select the Results checklist attribute.

The Scoring Run Details - Results window opens displaying the results of your scoring run in a table.

See [Evaluating Scoring Run Results](#) for more details on this topic.

3. Select the deciles you wish to include in your list by selecting the appropriate checkboxes.

4. Enter the name of the list in the List Name field.
5. Click **Generate List**.

References

Scoring Run Results

Scoring Run Status

Copying a Scoring Run

There are two ways to copy a scoring run setup: from the Analytics > Scoring Runs subtab and from the Scoring Run Details window. Use the first procedure to copy any scoring run. Use the second procedure to copy the scoring run you are viewing at that time.

Prerequisites

You cannot copy a scoring run with an Archived status.

Steps for the first procedure

1. Navigate to the Analytics > Scoring Runs subtab.
2. Click **Copy**. The Copy Scoring Run window appears.
3. Click **Go** in the Source Scoring Run Name field. Use the LOV to select the scoring run you wish to copy.
4. Enter a name for your new scoring run.
5. If you wish a different person to receive notifications about the scoring run, then click **Go** in the Owner field and use the LOV to select that individual.
6. Enter an optional description for the new scoring run.
7. Select the checkboxes corresponding to the information you wish to copy to the new scoring run:
 - a. **Main:** General model information entered in the Model Details window for the source model.
 - b. **Training Data:** Setup of the existing population of customers and/or prospects used for training the source model.
 - c. **Attachments:** All files attached to the source model (if any).
 - d. **Notes:** All notes created for the source model (if any).

- e. **Tasks:** All tasks assigned for the source model (if any).
 - f. **Team:** Access to the source model by members of your organization.
8. Click **Copy** to finish the copy process. The new scoring run appears in the list of scoring runs on the Analytics > Scoring Runs subtab.
- In the alternate, you can click **Restore** to clear your changes.

Steps for the second procedure

1. Navigate to the Analytics > Scoring Runs subtab
 2. Click **Copy** on the Scoring Run Details window while viewing details of the scoring run you want to copy. The Copy Scoring Run window appears. The source scoring run name, and other pertinent information is automatically populated.
 3. Enter a name for your new scoring run.
 4. If you wish a different person to receive notifications about the scoring run, then click **Go** in the Owner field and use the LOV to select that individual.
 5. Enter an optional description for the new scoring run.
 6. Select the checkboxes corresponding to the information you wish to copy to the new scoring run:
 - a. **Main:** General model information entered in the Model Details window for the source model.
 - b. **Training Data:** Setup of the existing population of customers and/or prospects used for training the source model.
 - c. **Attachments:** All files attached to the source model (if any).
 - d. **Notes:** All notes created for the source model (if any).
 - e. **Tasks:** All tasks assigned for the source model (if any).
 - f. **Team:** Access to the source model by members of your organization.
 7. Click **Copy** to finish the copying process.
- In the alternate, you can click **Restore** to clear your changes.

The new scoring run appears in the list of scoring runs on the Analytics > Scoring Runs subtab.

Guidelines

Copying scoring runs with a status of Draft, Scheduled, or Completed creates a new scoring run with a status of Draft.

References

Scoring Run Status

The Administration Tab

The Administration tab is where features that include marketing activities, marketing mediums, and the custom setups which determine the item on the side panel menus that appear in campaigns and events are set up.

Some of the features of the Administration tab are available for marketing super users. Use this tab for:

- Setting up marketing mediums for campaigns
- Creating custom setups for campaigns and events
- Enable campaign and event approval workflow
- Creating venues for events
- Creating a Data Source

Additionally, administrators can use the features of this tab to:

- Set up duplication rules
- Create categories and subcategories
- Create a list of similar words used to identify duplicate records
- Map customer models to Oracle Marketing Online
- Create metrics
- Create budget adjustment types
- Set up budget thresholds
- Set up claim adjustments reason codes
- Define workflow actions for claims
- Create claim types
- Set up system parameters for claims

- Set up trade profiles
- Set up history rules for claims

Creating an Email Cover Letter for Mail Merge

Use this general procedure to create an email cover letter that will be mail-merged and sent to customers.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Create an HTML email cover letter using any HTML editor.
2. In the cover letter, insert the fields to be mail merged where you want the mailmerge text to appear.

The fields must be surrounded by special double arrow bracket characters. For example: <<title>> <<first_name>> <<last_name>>. You can add these double brackets into the HTML source by adding `«` for the left bracket and `»` for the right bracket. For a list of available merge fields see Available Mailmerge Fields.

Here is what the HTML looks like for the salutation for the email:

```
Dear&laquo;title&raquo; &laquo;first_name&raquo;  
&laquo;last_name&raquo;
```

3. If the HTML cover letter you created contains images, then:
 - a. Create folder named `Images` and place the images in it.
 - b. Use the WinZip utility to zip up the HTML file and the Images folder with the images. You can ensure that the Image folder is preserved adding files using the Add Files with Wildcards Button.
 - c. Name the Zip file in a way that will enable users to recognize the cover letter contents.
4. Navigate to **Administration > Fulfillment > Master Document**
5. Click **Upload**.

The Master Document subtab appears.
6. Click **Upload**.

The Upload Master Document subtab appears.

7. Click **Browse**.
8. Select the zip file prepared with the email cover letter contents.
9. Click **Upload**.
10. The Master Document subtab appears with the uploaded zip file listed in the Master Document Name column.
11. Using the Query drop-down list select source of the mail merge fields you are using. This can be one of the two seeded queries, the Marketing Simple Query or the Marketing Detailed Query, or a query developed by your implementation team.
12. Click **Update**.

The cover letter is now ready for use in a marketing campaign.

Creating a Data Source

Data Sources allow you to map a source table or view to the Marketing List Entries table (AMS_LIST_ENTRIES). Use this procedure to create a Master or Sub Type Data Source.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Administration > Audience > Data Sources
2. Click **Create**
3. Enter a unique code for this data source
4. Enter a unique name for the List Source Name
5. Enter the Object Name for the source object (I.E. Table or view name for the source data)
6. Enter a brief description for this data source
7. Enter the primary key for the object name entered earlier
8. Identify whether this Data Source should be made active by checking Active

9. Identify whether this Data Source is a Master type or a Sub type. To identify as a sub type, do NOT check the Master checkbox.
10. Enter pairs of columns, one from the source table and one from the target table. The Source Field Name is a column name from the Object Name defined earlier. The List Field Name is a column name from the Marketing List Entries table (AMS_LIST_ENTRIES).
11. Enter a brief description for the column in the Source Field Meaning field.
12. When all lines have been filled or to save your work, click **Update**.

Additional blank lines are displayed, if appropriate after the save is successful.

For Example, Map the CUSTOMER_KEY column from my data source to COL121 in the Marketing List Entries table.

Data Source Columns (Source Field Name)	Marketing List Entries Table (AMS_LIST_ENTRIES) (List Field Name)
CUSTOMER_KEY	COL121
JOB_TITLE	COL144

References

[Data Sources](#)

Viewing and Editing a Data Source

Use this procedure to view or edit an existing Master or Sub Type Data Source.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Administration > Audience > Data Sources
2. Click a Data Source name

For Updating

3. Optionally, update any field as necessary. Editable fields include: Code, List Source Name, Object Name, Primary Key, Description, Master, and Active.
4. Optionally, add column mappings of Source Field Name to List Field Name.
5. When all lines have been filled or to save your work, click **Update**.
6. Additional blank lines are displayed, if appropriate after the save is successful.
7. Optionally, delete column mappings by checking Delete.
8. Save your work by clicking **Update**.

References

[Data Sources](#)

Viewing and Editing a Sub type Data Source for a Master Data Source

Use this procedure to view or edit an existing Sub Type Data Source.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Administration > Audience > Data Sources
2. Click a Data Source name
3. Click **Show Sub Types**
4. Optionally, delete a sub type by checking Delete
5. Optionally, enable or disable a sub type by checking or unchecking Enabled respectively.
6. Optionally, Click **Go** to see a list of other Active Data Sources.
7. Click a Data Source name
8. Save your work by clicking **Update**.

References

[Data Sources](#)

Creating Budget Adjustment Types

Use this procedure to create budget adjustment types.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Budget subtab and choose Adjustment Types.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Enter a unique name for the Adjustment Type.
4. Enter a description. This is an optional entry.
5. Choose one of the four decrease/increase amount options, from the drop-down list.
6. Choose either a negative or positive creation sign, from the drop-down list. This is an optional entry.
7. Click the calendar button and select the date that the adjustment type is to become active.
8. Click the calendar button to select the date that the adjustment type become inactive. This is an optional entry.
9. Click **Create**.

Setting Up Budget Thresholds

Use this procedure to set up budget thresholds.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Budget subtab and click Thresholds.
2. Click **Create**. The Create Thresholds screen appears.
3. Enter a name for the Threshold you want to create.

4. Use the Start and End Period Go buttons to select predefined periods. Selecting a Start and End period from this list automatically creates Start and End Dates, respectively. This is an optional entry.
5. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this threshold becomes active. If the system currently displays the correct date, tab to the next field.
6. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this threshold becomes inactive. If the system currently displays the correct date, tab to the next field.
7. Click **Enabled**.
8. Enter a description of the budget threshold. This is an optional entry.
9. Click **Create**.

Setting Up Claim Adjustment Reasons

Use this procedure to set up claim adjustment Reasons within Trade Management functionality.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim subtab and click Reasons.
2. Click **Create**. The Reason Details screen appears.
3. Enter an identifying Reason name. (Example: couponing, missed discount, missed deal)
4. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this reason becomes active.
5. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this reason becomes inactive, or no longer available. This is an optional entry.
6. Enter a description detailing the reason. This is an optional entry.
7. Choose a Reason Code from the drop-down list. This is an optional entry.
8. Click **Create**.

Defining Workflow Actions for Claim Settlement

Use this procedure to create claim settlement actions within Trade Management functionality.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim subtab and choose Actions.
2. Click **Create**. The Action Details screen appears.
3. Choose a Source Object, from the drop-down list.
4. Enter a unique identifying name for the Action (series of tasks).
5. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this Action becomes active.
6. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this Action becomes inactive, or no longer available. This is an optional entry.
7. Enter a description detailing the substance of the action. This is an optional entry.
8. In the Task Template area, enter a Name and Description for the task.
9. Choose a priority, from the drop-down list.
10. Enter a numerical Duration of time it will take to complete the task.
11. Choose the Duration Type, from the drop-down list. (Example: Days, Weeks, Months)
12. Choose a Task Type, from the drop-down list.
13. Click **Create**.

Creating Claim Types

Use this procedure to create claim types.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim subtab and choose Claim Types.
2. Click **Create**. The Claim Types screen appears.
3. Enter a unique identifying name for the Claim Type.
4. Enter a description of the Claim Type. This is an optional entry.
5. Choose a Creation Sign from the drop-down list.
6. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this Claim Type becomes active.
7. Click the Calendar button and select the date for which this Claim Type becomes inactive, or no longer available. This is an optional entry.
8. Enter a Transaction Type. Click **Go** and choose from the current listing of Transaction Types.
9. Click **Create**.

Setting Up System Parameters for Claims

Use this procedure to set up system parameters for Claims. Data entry in each of the following fields is optional.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim subtab and choose System Parameters.
2. Click **Create**. The System Parameters screen appears.
3. Enter a set of books to use. Click **Go** for a current listing of book sets.
4. Enter an Accounting Method. (Example: Accrual, Fixed)
5. Click the GL Accounting, Post to GL, and Rounding boxes, as appropriate, to active each of the boxes. A checkmark indicates that the function is active. These boxes are toggles. To deactivate any of them, click the box an additional time.
6. Choose a GL Date Type from the drop-down list.

7. Enter a Sales, Expense, or Charge Account number. Click **Go** for a current listing of numbers.
8. Enter an Accrual Liability Account. Click **Go** for a current listing of accounts.
9. Enter a Receivable Clearing Account. Click **Go** for a current listing of accounts.
10. Enter a Vendor Clearing Account. Click **Go** for a current listing of accounts.
11. Choose a Batch Source from the drop-down list.
12. Enter a Reason. Click **Go** for a current listing of Reasons.
13. Enter a Claim Type. Click **Go** for a current listing of Claim Types.
14. Enter the Days Due number.
15. Enter the Debit Memo. Click **Go** for a current listing of debit memos.
16. Enter the Credit Memo. Click **Go** for a current listing of credit memos.
17. Enter the Payables Payment Term. Click **Go** for a current listing of terms.
18. Click the Autopay box to activate autopay. A check mark indicates that the function is active. This box is a toggle. To deactivate it, click it once more.
 - a. Enter an autopay Reason. Click **Go** for a current listing of Reasons.
 - b. Enter an autopay Claim Type. Click **Go** for a current listing of Claim Types.
 - c. Enter a Frequency.
 - d. Enter a Frequency unit.
19. Click **Update**.

Setting Up Trade Profiles

Use this procedure to set up Trade Profiles within Trade Management functionality. Data entry in each of the following fields is optional.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim subtab and choose Trade Profiles.
2. Enter a Customer. Click **Go** for a current listing of Customers.

3. Enter a unique Trade Profile Number.
4. Enter a Site Use. Click **Go** for a current listing of Sites.
5. Enter a Vendor code. Click **Go** for a current listing of vendor codes.
6. Enter the Vendor Site. Click **Go** for a current listing of vendor sites.
7. Enter the Days Due number.
8. Click the Autopay box to activate autopay. A checkmark indicates that the function is active. This box is a toggle. To deactivate it, click it once more.
9. Enter an autopay Frequency.
10. Choose a Frequency unit from the drop-down list.
11. Enter a Threshold Amount.
12. Choose a Payment Method from the drop-down list.
13. Click **Update**.

Setting Up History Rules

Use this procedure to set up History Rules within Trade Management functionality. Data entry in each of the following fields is optional.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Claim subtab and choose History Rule.
2. Choose a Parent Object Type from the drop-down list.
3. Choose a Object Attribute from the drop-down list.
4. Populate the History Rule Column from the Available Column, as desired.
 - a. Click on the desired column from the Available Columns list.
 - b. Click the **Right Arrow** button one time to move the highlighted column from the Available Columns list to the History Rule Columns list. Conversely, highlight and then click the **Left Arrow** button to move an item from the History Rule Columns list to the Available Columns List.

- c. Click the **Double Right Arrow** button to move all the items from the Available Columns list to the History Rule Columns list. Conversely, click the **Double Left Arrow** button to move all items from the History Rule Columns list to the Available Columns List.
5. When you have finished building your final History Rule Columns list, click **Update**.

Searching

Use this procedure to search the Oracle Marketing Online database for messages, campaigns, deliverables, events, and lists. Search will not locate notes, attachments and tasks associated with marketing objects. Locate the appropriate message, campaign, event, or other object to view notes, attachments and tasks associated with that object.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Enter at least a part of the name of the object in the search field and click Quick Find to locate the object.
2. If the object name is unknown:
 - a. Use [Advanced Search](#) to find the object and note its name.
 - b. Use [Quick Find](#) to locate the desired object.

Searching Using Quick Find

Use this procedure to search for campaigns, events, and other objects in Oracle Marketing Online.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Enter at least a part of the name of the object in the search field and click Quick Find to search for it in the database:
 - a. Select the type of object from the Quick Find drop-down menu.

- b. Enter a partial or full name. You can use % to indicate omitted words or letters.

Note: To speed up searches, use the % wild card at the beginning or the end of a word or the sequence of words. For example, entering a search as %results is faster than a search for %results%. A search for Q1% is faster than a search for %Q1%.

- c. Click **Go**.

The Search Results page displays the names of all of the found objects as links.

- d. Click the object name to display it.

Using Advanced Search

Use this procedure to search for campaigns, events, deliverables or lists in Oracle Marketing Online using a number of search criteria.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Click **Advanced Search**.
2. In the Object Types region, indicate what type of object you wish to search for by selecting the appropriate check box(es). You may make multiple selections. Notes, messages, tasks and attachments are not searchable.
3. To search by a partial object name, its status, source code, or owner make entries in the Simple Query Criteria region fields.
4. To search by the date an object is effective:
 - a. Estimate the dates by entering the general ledger periods in the Start Period and End Period fields. To enter the dates, click **Go** and select from the list of values.
 - b. Enter more precise dates in the Dates From and Dates To fields.
5. To search by purpose, select the appropriate check boxes in the Purpose region.
6. To search by activity type and activity, then:

- a. Select the appropriate activity type check box(es).
 - b. Select the desired activities in the Activity list box. Select multiple activities by holding down the CTRL key on the keyboard.
7. To search by offer type, select the appropriate check box(es) in the Offer Type section.
8. To search by audience segment, select the segment(s) in the Segment list box. Select multiple activities by holding down the CTRL key on the keyboard.
9. To search by geographical location, click **Add** in the Geography region and select from the list of values to add the location(s).
10. To search by product or by product categories, then click **Add** in the Product section and select the product(s) or product categories from the list of values.
11. To search by deliverable, click **Add** in the Deliverable section and select the deliverable(s) from the list of values.
12. To search by partner, then click **Add** in the Partner section and select the partner(s) from the list of values.
13. To search by message, then click **Add** in the Message section and select the message(s) from the list of values.
14. To search by workbook, then click **Add** in the Workbook section and select the workbook(s) from the list of values.
15. To search by list, then click **Add** in the Existing List section and select the list(s) from the list of values.
16. Click **Search**.

The Advanced Search Results page displays the results of the search. This list does not link to the objects themselves.

17. To view an object, use Quick Find to search for and display the object.
18. To view more details about an object, follow the procedure outlined in Viewing Details About Advanced Search Results.
19. If the search results display too few or too many items, refine your search by reducing or increasing, respectively, the criteria used and repeat the search

Viewing Details About Advanced Search Results

Use this procedure to view the results of your Advanced Search in more detail.

Prerequisites

Perform an Advanced Search first.

Steps

1. If the search results list the desired object(s):
 - a. Select the **Select** check box for each object to view it.
 - b. Click **View Details**.

A separate browser window lists information about the found items.
2. If the search results display too few or too many items, refine your search by reducing or increasing, respectively, the criteria used and repeat the search

Entering Geography Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more geography regions as search criteria in the Advanced Search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Geography Locator window. Open it from the Geography region of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.
2. To restrict the selection of geographical locations to a particular geographical level, then:
 - a. Make a selection from the Level drop-down list.
 - b. Click **Go** to the right of the Name field.

The list of locations is restricted to the geographical level selected.
3. To search for a geographical location:
 - a. In the Name field at the top of the window, enter a name or a partial name. Use the% to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go** to the right of the Name field.

A list of found locations appears.
4. If you wish to add all geographical locations displayed in the window then:

- a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
- b. Click **Add**.
The locations are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
- c. If more than one page of locations displays, then click Next and repeat the same procedure.

Note: If more than one page of locations displays, you must add each page separately. The Select All button selects only those locations visible on a page at one time.

5. If you wish to add only selected geographical locations, then:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.
The locations are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of locations displays, then click Next to view the next page and repeat this procedure.

Note: If more than one page of locations displays, you must add locations on each page separately. A location you select on a page does not remain selected when you view another page.

6. When finished selecting geographical locations, click **Close**.

Entering Product Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more products or product families as search criteria in the advanced search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Product Locator window. Open it from the Product region of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.

2. Select add products or add product families:
 - a. From the Type drop-down, list select Product or Product Family.
 - b. Click **Go** to the right of the Name field.

The window displays the list of products or product families depending on your selection.
3. To search for a products or product families, then:
 - a. In the Name field at the top of the window, enter a name or a partial name. Use the % character to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go** to the right of the Name field.

The window displays the list of products or product families.
4. To add all products or product families displayed in the window then:
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The products or product families are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more then one page of product or product families displays, then click Next and repeat the same procedure.

Note: If more than one page of product families displays, you must add each page separately. The Select All button selects only those products or product families visible on a page at one time.

5. If you wish to add only selected products or product families, then:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The products or product families are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of locations displays, then click Next to view the next page and repeat this procedure.

Note: If more than one page of products or product families displays, locations on each page separately. A product or product family you select on a page does not remain selected when another page is viewed.

6. When finished, click **Close**.

Entering Deliverable Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more deliverables as search criteria in the advanced search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Deliverable Locator page. Open it from the Deliverable section of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.
2. Select deliverable and:
 - a. Enter its name or a partial name into the Name field. You can use the % to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go**.

The page displays the list of found deliverables.
3. To add all deliverables displayed in the window as search criteria:
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
 - b. Click **Add**.

All the deliverables on the page are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more then one page of deliverables displays, then click Next and repeat the same procedure.

Note: If more than one page of deliverables displays, you must add each page separately. The Select All button selects only those deliverables visible on a page at one time.

4. To add only selected deliverables, then:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The deliverables are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of deliverables displays, then click Next to view the next page and repeat this procedure.

Note: If more than one page of deliverables displays, you must add locations on each page separately. A deliverable you select on a page does not remain selected when you view another page.

5. When you are done, click **Close**.

Entering Partner Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more partners as search criteria in the advanced search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Partner Locator window. Open it from the Partner region of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.
2. To search for a partner:
 - a. Enter the name or partial name into the Name field. Use % to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go**.

The page displays the list of found partners.

3. To add all partners displayed in the window as search criteria:
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The partners are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of partners displays, then click Next and repeat the same procedure.

Note: If more than one page of partners displays, you must add each page separately. The Select All button selects only those partners visible on a page at one time.

4. If you wish to add only selected partners, then:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The partners are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of partners displays, then click Next to view the next page and repeat the procedure.

Note: If more than one page of partners displays, add locations on each page separately.

5. Click **Close**.

Entering Message Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more messages as search criteria in the advanced search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Message Locator page. Open it from the Message section of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.

2. To search for a message:
 - a. Enter its name or partial name into the Name field. Use% to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go**.

The page displays the list of found messages.
3. To add all messages displayed in the window as search criteria:
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The messages are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of messages displays, then click **Next** and repeat the same procedure.

Note: Each page of messages must be added separately. The **Select All** button selects only those messages visible on a page at time.

4. To add only selected messages, then:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The messages are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of messages displays, then click **Next** to view the next page and repeat this procedure.
5. When finished, click **Close**.

Viewing Existing Workbooks

Use this procedure to view existing workbooks in Oracle Web Discoverer.

Prerequisites

An existing workbook

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Discoverer. A separate browser window is started. You will automatically be logged into Oracle Web Discoverer.

2. Once logged in, the Workbook Wizard is displayed. Click **Open an existing workbook**.
3. Click **Database**.
4. Select your workbook from the list and click **Open**.
5. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
6. Select the Worksheet on which you want the condition added.
7. If prompted to run the query, reply Yes.

Creating Workbooks in Oracle Web Discoverer

Oracle Web Discoverer supports you in creating queries which you can use to generate lists in Oracle Marketing Online without a knowledge of programming or query language. Use this procedure to create queries in Oracle Web Discoverer.

For more information on this process, refer to the *Oracle Discoverer Users Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Discoverer
A separate browser window is started. You will automatically be logged into Oracle Web Discoverer.
2. After the Oracle Web Discoverer applet finishes loading, the Workbook Wizard appears. Click **Create a new workbook**.
3. Click **Table** in response to How do you want to display the results?
4. Click **Next**.

The wizard now displays all the Oracle Marketing Online Business Areas and associated folders and items. Two are provided out-of-the-box for Oracle Marketing Online. These Business Areas hold the items you use to construct your query.

For more information on the out-of-the-box Marketing Online Business Areas, see:

- Marketing Online Person List Management Business Area

- Marketing Online Organization List Management Business Area

5. Select a Business Area from the available drop list. These Business Areas hold the items you can use to construct your query.

To view the contents of a Business Area or Folder, click on the plus (+) sign to the left of the name

6. Construct your query by moving entire folders or individual items.

In the query you construct, you must include the mandatory item (**Mandatory Identifier**) from the folder representing the Master Data Source.

Note: You must include at least this mandatory identifier for a query to work properly

- a. Select the folder name or item name
- b. Click the right arrow

After you move folders or items over, other folders and items may become grayed out (disabled). This means that the items you have currently selected do not directly relate to the grayed out items. To have these folders and items available, select a common attribute between an item you have selected and an item in a grayed-out folder.

For example, You have selected the Mandatory Identifier from the Master Data Source folder. The Site folder is grayed out. Now if you select Site Identifier from the Master Data Source folder, the Site folder is now available for use.

7. Select any **Include xxx** items as appropriate. These item types represent the Sub Type Data Sources.

Sub Type Data Sources will automatically retrieve and map other miscellaneous detail information into the Marketing List Entries table (AMS_LIST_ENTRIES).

(See the section [Data Sources](#) for more information on Data Sources).

8. If you plan to use an item for the condition of the query, then you must include that item in your query as well. For example, if you plan to restrict the query using the condition `Organization Name = 'Global Enterprises'`, then you must select the **Organization Name** item for your query.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Click **Next** to skip Step 3 (Table Layout).

11. Click **Next** to skip Step 4 (Format).
12. Optionally, add any further conditions to narrow the result set. (See [Adding Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks](#)).
13. Click **Next**.
14. Optionally, add sort conditions. (See [Adding Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks](#)).
15. Click **Next**.
16. Optionally, add any calculations. (See [Adding Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks](#)).
17. Click **Next**.
18. Click **Next** to skip Step 8 (Percentages).
19. Click **Next** to skip Step 9 (Totals).
20. Skip Step 10 (Parameters).
21. Click **Finish**.

Oracle Web Discoverer executes the query you just created and the results are displayed.

22. Select menu option File > Save
23. Enter a name for your workbook
24. Click **Save**

References

Adding Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks

Adding Sort Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks

Adding Calculations in Discoverer Workbooks

Data Sources

Understanding the Marketing Online Person List Management Business Area

Understanding the Marketing Online Organization List Management Business Area

Oracle Discoverer User Guide

Adding Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks

Use this procedure to add Discoverer Conditions to an existing Worksheet in a Workbook.

A more comprehensive description of this process can be found in the *Oracle Discoverer User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Discoverer
A separate browser window is started. You will automatically be logged into Oracle Web Discoverer.
2. Once logged in, the Workbook Wizard is displayed. Click **Open an existing workbook**.
3. Click **Database**.
4. Select your workbook from the list and click **Open**.
5. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
6. Select the Worksheet where the condition should be added. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
7. From the menus, select Sheet > Edit Sheet.
8. Select the **Conditions** tab.
9. Click **New...**
10. Under the Formula section, select the item from the drop list.
11. Select a Condition. For example "=" or "<" or ">".
12. Select a Value from the drop list. Optionally, check **Match case**.
13. Click **OK** twice.
14. Select menu option File > Save.

References

Oracle Discoverer User Guide

Adding Sort Conditions in Discoverer Workbooks

Use this procedure to add Discoverer Sort Conditions to an existing Worksheet in a Workbook.

A more comprehensive description of this process can be found in the *Oracle Discoverer User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Discoverer.

A separate browser window is started. You will automatically be logged into Oracle Web Discoverer.

2. Once logged in, the Workbook Wizard is displayed. Click **Open an existing workbook**.
3. Click **Database**.
4. Select your workbook from the list and click **Open**.
5. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
6. Select the Worksheet where the condition should be added. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
7. From the menus, select Sheet > Edit Sheet.
8. Select the Sort tab.
9. Click **Add**.
10. Select the item to sort by.
11. Select the Direction.
12. Repeat steps 9 and 11 for all items to sort by.
13. Click **OK** twice.
14. Select menu option File > Save.

References

Oracle Discoverer User Guide

Adding Calculations in Discoverer Workbooks

Use this procedure to add Discoverer Calculations to an existing Worksheet in a Workbook.

A more comprehensive description of this process can be found in the *Oracle Discoverer User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to Audience > Discoverer

A separate browser window is started. You will automatically be logged into Oracle Web Discoverer.

2. Once logged in, the system displays the Workbook Wizard. Click **Open an existing workbook**.
3. Click **Database**.
4. Select your workbook from the list and click **Open**.
5. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
6. Select the Worksheet where the condition should be added. If prompted to run the query, reply No.
7. From the menus, select Sheet > Edit Sheet.
8. Select the **Calculations** tab.
9. Click **New...**
10. Enter a name for this Calculation.

Some of the next three steps can be entered manually for calculations, which are not dependent on an items.

For example, Manually add."2001 -" and then Select item Date of Birth. This calculation would be titled AGE.
11. Optionally, from the Show section, select a item and Paste to the Calculation section.
12. Click one of the operator symbols below the Calculation section. For example "+" or "x".

13. Optionally, from the Show section, select another item and Paste > to the Calculation section.
14. Click **OK** twice.
15. Select menu option File > Save.

References

Oracle Discoverer User Guide

Entering Workbook Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more workbooks as search criteria in the advanced search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the Workbook Locator page. Open it from the Workbook region of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.
2. To search for a workbook:
 - a. Enter its name or a partial name into the Name field. Use% to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go**.

The window displays the list of found workbooks.
3. To add all workbooks displayed in the window as search criteria, then:
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The workbooks are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of workbooks displays, then click Next and repeat the same procedure.

Note: Each page of workbooks must be added separately. The Select All button selects only workbooks visible on a page at a time.

4. To add only selected workbooks:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The workbooks are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of workbooks displays, then click Next to view the next page and repeat this procedure.
5. When you are finished, click **Close**.

Entering List Search Criteria

Use this procedure to enter one or more lists as search criteria in the advanced search.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. Navigate to the List Locator window. Open it from the List region of Advanced Search by clicking **Add**.
2. To search for a list:
 - a. Enter its name or a partial name into the Name field. Use% to substitute for missing letters.
 - b. Click **Go**.

The window displays the list of found lists.
3. To add all lists displayed in the window as search criteria, then:
 - a. Select the **Select All** check box at the bottom of the list.
 - b. Click **Add**.

The lists are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more then one page of lists displays, then click Next and repeat the same procedure.

Note: Each page of lists must be added separately. The Select All button selects only lists visible on a page at a time.

4. To add only selected lists, then:
 - a. Select the check box next to each.
 - b. Click **Add**.
The lists are added to the list on the Advanced Search window.
 - c. If more than one page of lists displays, then click Next to view the next page and repeat this procedure.
5. When finished, click **Close**.

Use this procedure to enter one or more lists as search criteria in the advanced search.

The List of Values (LOV)

This topic explains how to use list of values (LOV) fields in the application. These are fields with a Go button located to the right of the field.

Prerequisites

None

Steps

1. If a partial search string is known:
 - a. Enter the characters to search for in the field.
Use use the percent symbol to substitute for any characters. For example, entering `ca%` searches for all of the objects starting with the letters `ca`. Entering `%ca`, searches for all of the objects ending with the letters `ca`. Searching for `c%a` searches for any string of characters beginning with `c` and ending with `a`.

Note: Search speed is increased by supplying the beginning or the end of a sequence of characters. For example, searching for %results is faster than a searching for %results%. A search for Q1% is faster than a search for %Q1%.

b. Click Go.

The list of values window opens, displaying the results of your search.

2. If the search returns multiple pages of results, use the First, Previous, Next, and Last buttons to navigate through the results.
3. To repeat your search with modified search criteria, then:
 - a. Enter the new search string in the Search Keyword field.
 - b. Click **Search**.
4. To select value from a list and enter it into the field, click on the value which appears as a link.
5. To cancel out of a list of values, click **Cancel**.

Troubleshooting

System Error: You have been signed out automatically.

If you receive this error:

1. Clear the cache of your browser following instructions that come with your browser.
2. Close all browser windows. If using Netscape, this includes email messages.
3. Restart the browser.
4. Log into Oracle Marketing Online.

Glossary

Activity Type

The types of marketing activities that can be created and defined in Oracle Marketing Online.

For the Oracle internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, the types of activities that may be created are:

- - Advertising
- - Direct Marketing
- - Events
- - Publishing
- - PR/AR
- - Internal Communications
- - Infrastructure. *Examples: costs from program budgets that relate to running our marketing business – example: translation, database management, web management, refurbishing event stands, and so on.*

Each Activity Type has a listing of associated activities below it. This is detailed the Oracle Marketing Online Navigation section of Internal Oracle Marketing Online training materials (see slides toward the end of that section)

NOTE: Additional activity type(s) may need to be created to facilitate MDF requests from Partners, as Partners Online is implemented.

Activity

Sub-level of Activity Type. In the Oracle internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, this is used to split on-line and off-line activities. For example, below activity type 'Advertising', one would find 'Advertising' and 'e-Advertising'

Actuals

Seen on Cost Types and Metrics in Oracle Marketing Online – used to enter the actual costs or actual metrics

Admin

A main tab in Oracle Marketing Online, giving access to a variety of administrative functions. In Oracle's internal rollout, access to Admin tab functionality will be restricted to select users.

AIM

Standard methodology proposed by Oracle's Application Implementation Method. Only AIM tasks that are relevant to the Oracle Marketing Online 11i rollout project are included within this glossary.

AMER

Oracle's global region, comprised of countries CA, US, AR, BR, CL, CO, CR, EC, MX, PE, PR, UY and VE.

Analytics

A group of tools used to predict purchasing behavior by analyzing customers' response to a prior campaign.

APAC

Oracle's global region of Asia Pacific, comprised of countries AU, CN, HK, ID, IN, KR, LK, MY, NZ, PH, PK, SG, TH, TW and VN.

Approval Rule

Rules created in Oracle Marketing Online (and also in other parts of the E-Business Suite, to control the routing and sequence of approval requests. This means users do not manually have to select the correct approver, they simply submit for approval.

Attachment

Electronic document that can be uploaded or linked to Oracle Marketing Online for later download by other users.

Attachment Type

When attachments are added at various levels within Oracle Marketing Online (for example, to messages, campaigns & schedules, events & schedules, deliverables, etc.), the attachment type must be selected. Allowable values are:

-
- File: Any digitized file that is loaded into Oracle Marketing Online.
 - URL: A URL that points to a file not actually loaded into Oracle Marketing Online.

Audience

A main tab in Oracle Marketing Online, giving access to all functions for contact management, list creation & management, list import, target segmentation etc. The Audience tab also includes a variety of sub tabs, giving access to list import, list build, segmentation and so on.

Audience Level

This refers to the seniority or role of the targeted audience. You may select more than one option. These definitions apply equally to internal and partner audiences, as well as to customer, prospect, press or analyst audiences. Audience levels are C-Level, Developer, IS Professionals, LOB Function Management.

B2B

Business-to-Business

B2B2C

Business-to-Business-to-Consumer

B2C

Business-to-Consumer

BIS

Business Intelligence System; a module in the E Business Suite

BR.110 (Application Setup Document)

AIM Task: In this task, you capture the setup decisions and lists of values, and show how they should be implemented in the appropriate environment. The deliverable for this task is an Application Setup Document.

BRS

Business Requirements Scenarios - this is the actual output of the RD070 AIM task.

Budget

A main Tab in Oracle Marketing Online, giving access to a variety of Budget creation and management functions. Note: Restricted use for Finance.

Budget Amount (also Initial Budget Amount)

Currency and value, set initially (in Oracle Marketing Online 11.5.6) on Budget Cue card of an Oracle Marketing Online object in the planning phase, as the object is being created.

Budget Source

Names of budgets created in Oracle Marketing Online, on Budget Tab. Users can request funds from various budget sources to cover costs of the campaigns & schedules, or events & schedules that they create in Oracle Marketing Online.

Business Rules

The rules and guide lines which govern how an organization uses an Oracle product.

Budget Source Value

The amount being requested, or approved, from a Budget Source.

Business Unit

A grouping of users within the application, defining the organizational structure.

C-Level

An audience level, i.e., Board and very senior levels (CIO, CEO, CFO, Managing Director, other directors, Presidents, Vice Presidents, and so on).

Campaign

1. A main Tab in Oracle Marketing Online, from where Campaigns and Campaign Schedules are created and defined.
2. Campaigns are objects in Oracle Marketing Online describing a grouping of marketing activities. Campaigns may be 'parented' to Programs, as part of the Program hierarchy in Oracle Marketing Online, allowing for costs and metrics to roll up.

Campaign Schedule

Campaign Schedules are created below Campaigns, to define actual marketing activities that will be executed. These executions may include direct marketing, advertising, PR/AR etc., as well as events.

CCM

Concurrent Manager. For example, approvals workflow requests are batched and then handled by concurrent manager jobs.

CDS

Core Data Set – the set of data and profile options for organizations and contacts deemed by Oracle, internally, to be necessary in our CRM implementation.

Claim

A discrepancy between amount billed to a customer and the amount paid by a customer. Claims are used to track discrepancies to their basis and validate them.

COGS

Cost of Goods Sold

Content Item

A specific instance of a content type. A merchant can create any number of content items that belong to a content type. Example: Product is a content type, Toshiba 550CDT Laptop is a content item.

Content Type

An eMerchandising term; a type of content. Example: Products, Campaigns, Product reviews.

Cost Type

A breakdown of pre-specified cost on each Oracle Marketing Online object; for example, within a total budget value of \$20,000, cost types may be allocated as \$10,000 on Mail List Buy and \$10,000 on Production/Creative.

CRM

Customer Relationship Management - a major component of the E Business Suite (the “front office” element).

CRP

Conference Room Pilot – a typical early stage in testing and evaluating an application.

Cue Card (also known as Side Panel Menu Items)

The items shown in left hand navigation bar inside each tab/sub tab, after an item has been created or selected.

Customer Master Record(s) (also known as Customer Master Files)

The actual records of customers, prospects, partners, vendors, etc. that are in the Trading Communities Architecture stored within the E Business Suite. These records are shared across all the modules in the suite.

DBA

Database Administrator

Deduplication

To remove duplicate records from a list, the entries are compared based on the deduplication rules specified in the administration tab. Use of Word Standardization improves the completeness of the deduplication process. (See Word Standardization below.)

Deliverable

1. A main Tab in Oracle Marketing Online, where deliverables (and collateral) are created and defined.
2. A record of the actual physical and/or electronic things produced by marketers. Used to execute campaigns or events (i.e., graphics for an advert, text for a mailer, a piece of collateral, and so on.) Deliverables are classified by type and sub type. They should be associated with the campaign or event to which they relate, in order to monitor Deliverables Usage and to ensure that costs rollup correctly. Attachments to Deliverables give access to soft copy of the Deliverable itself.

Discoverer

Oracle's data query tool

Developer

An audience level - The developer community

Display Priority

A business attribute of the posting's content type used to prioritize the recommended content for display, based on business objectives. Example: prioritize the recommended products based on price, and display the highest priced product.

EBPP

Electronic Bill Presentation and Payment, a module in the E Business Suite.

EMEA

Oracle's global region, comprised of countries AE, AF, AT, BE, BG, CH, CZ, DE, DK, EE, EG, ES, FI, FR, GR, HR, HU, IL, IT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RU, SA, SE, SI, SK, TR, UK, ZA + Middle East Ops (ME) and African Ops (ZO).

eMerchandising

A group of methodologies used to configure websites according to customer preferences and anticipated interests.

ERP

Enterprise Resource Planning - also a major component of the E Business Suite (the "back office" element).

Event

1. A main tab in Oracle Marketing Online, where event-based activities are created and defined.
2. An object created in Oracle Marketing Online to group together an Event Schedule. Events may be 'parented' to Programs, as part of the Program hierarchy in Oracle Marketing Online, allowing costs and metrics to roll up. NOTE: In Oracle's internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, only Global Events will create Events; for example, OOW and AppsWorld. Other users will create their event(s) as schedule(s) below the campaigns that they create.

Event Promotion

A specific type of Campaign that may be created in Oracle Marketing Online to promote an Event; it will contain a Campaign Schedule, detailing the executions, and will be linked to the Event. NOTE: In Oracle's internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, only Global Events will create this type of Campaign, to detail the supporting executions for major events like OOW and AppsWorld only.

Event Schedule

Event Schedules are created below Events, representing each occurrence of the Events (i.e. Boston on 22 May 02, Tokyo on 01 Jun 02, and so on).

NOTE: In Oracle's internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, only Global Events will create Events, for example, OOW and AppsWorld. Other users will

create their Event(s) as part of the mixed schedule(s), below the campaigns they create.

Execution

1. A main tab in Oracle Marketing Online, giving access to automated execution functionality; for example, emailing.
2. A cue card in Oracle Marketing Online, giving access to create or view schedules below Campaigns and Events.

Forecast

1. (Seen on Cost Types and Metrics in Oracle Marketing Online) – used to enter the forecast costs or actual metrics.
2. A sales forecast, created in OSO, OTS and other sales applications.

Geography

1. A Cue Card in Oracle Marketing Online, allowing users to define the geographical area (country, region, sub region, state, and city) in which an Oracle Marketing Online object will be executed.
2. Geography (as a generic term) is also used to refer to the geographical location/reporting lines of users.

GUI

Graphical User Interface

Home

A main tab in Oracle Marketing Online; it is the default tab shown as a user first logs in.

Import

A sub-tab under the main Audience Tab, giving access to List Import functionality. (in 11.5.6?)

Initial Budget Amount

See Budget Amount

Interaction

Any interaction (or touch point) with a customer or prospect. For example, contacts may be targeted, and they may respond, register, attend, and evaluate (dependent

upon the activity type). Interactions may later be qualified and rated, and may become leads.

Interaction Import

A functionality in Oracle Tele Sales that will allow interactions and/or new customer/prospect records to be imported from pre-defined format flat files into customer master records. In Oracle's internal implementation of the e Business Suite, it is anticipated that some marketers will use this OTS functionality rather than relying on ISD/DMD.

Intersect

A value used in List Build and Selection. Use this option to create a selection that includes only the intersect (overlap) of two chosen lists.

IS Professionals

An Audience Level: This is Information Technology professionals in general - technical project managers, DBAs, technical architects, etc.

iStore

An Oracle product designed for producing commerce websites.

JSP

Java Script Page or Java Server Page

JTF

Java Technical Foundation

Lead

A qualified potential to sell products or services as a result of a person at a company contacting Oracle either by their own choice or in response to a marketing/sales activity; a lead is in fact a qualified response. Leads are rated in the e-Business Suite; Oracle's process splits leads by A, B, C and D levels.

A definition of lead grades included in the Oracle Marketing Online Navigation section of Internal Oracle Marketing Online training materials (see slides toward the end of that section).

List

A sub tab under the audience tab, it lists organizations and/or contacts – may be the output of list selection criteria, or lists (organizations, contacts, leads, event registrations, and so on) to be imported into the e-Business Suite.

List Import Table

A database table where records imported from a rented or purchased list are stored. These records may be added to TCA from the List Import Table.

LOB / Function Management

An Audience Level: This is line of business or functional middle managers (Sales Managers, HR Managers, Distribution Managers, Marketing Managers, Production Managers, and so on).

LOV

List of Values (pick list)

Marketing Medium

The specific ‘channel’ that will be used to execute an Oracle Marketing Online campaign. Marketing Mediums differ by Activity. In Oracle’s internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, the Marketing Medium further defines the activity.

Marketing object

A functional unit in Oracle Marketing Online. Examples include: campaign, event, deliverable, list, message.

MENU (*Internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation term*)

To facilitate the “create once, execute many times” philosophy, HQ Campaign Teams & HQ Global Events create “MENU” campaigns & schedules to provide a quarterly listing available for country selection. Countries copy the “MENU” objects, add budgets, costs, metrics and so on, gain approval, then execute.

MENUMAND (*Internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation term*)

Used in object names to show the object is both a MENU object, and is Mandatory for the top countries.

MENUOPTI (*Internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation term*)

Used in object names to show the object is a MENU object that should be considered as optional, or “off the shelf” - it is not mandatory for countries to execute against these items.

Merchandising Strategy

An algorithm used to select personalized content items (including products, offers, ads, product reviews) for display on a web site.

Merchandising strategies include strategies from Oracle Personalization, static cross-sells, and so on. Example of a content selector: “Product Recommendation based on Visitor History using Oracle Personalization.”

MES

Marketing Encyclopedia System, a module in the E Business Suite

Message

1. A sub Tab in Oracle Marketing Online, below the main Deliverables tab, where top level / corporate message(s) are defined.
2. The actual objects created on the Message sub-tab: campaigns and/or events may be associated with messages, to show which corporate message is being promoted. Oracle’s internal business process will mandate that every campaign or event is associated with at least one message.
3. A Cue Card seen on Campaigns, Events and Schedules, allowing these objects to be linked with the Messages they use.

Metric(s)

Any measure of the success of a marketing activity - the number targeted, responded, and so on. Forecast metrics (i.e., expected numbers) are recorded in Oracle Marketing Online as marketing activities are created. Actual metrics (i.e., the achieved numbers) are calculated automatically, based on the interactions recorded against customer master records. For Oracle’s internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, the listing of Metrics available to be tracked has been pre-defined in Oracle Marketing Online.

MLS

Multi-lingual Support

MRP

Manufacturing Resource Planning, a module in the E Business Suite

Multi Org

Used to describe the capabilities of 11i to deal with multiple organizations/languages/currencies, etc., within one single application – this is essential given Oracle’s single instance rollout policy.

Note Type

Allows users to classify “Notes” created in Oracle Marketing Online by their type. Notes may be added at various levels within Oracle Marketing Online (for example, to messages, campaigns, events, schedules, deliverables, and so on). Notes are created on the Notes Cue Card of any object.

Object

An object is a distinct item (or record) created in Oracle Marketing Online – examples are Message, Program, Campaign, Event, Schedule, Deliverable, Budget, etc.

Objective

A field seen on several Oracle Marketing Online objects. Note: The Purpose and Objective fields show the same LOV; all campaigns, events and schedules will have either a Purpose or an Objective. In Oracle’s internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, these fields are used to show the Global Programs plus other necessary values (Corp PR, Local, and so on).

OC or OM

Order Capture or Order Management, a part of the e-Business Suite allowing orders to be created and passed for fulfillment.

Offer

A discount for purchasing products or services.

Offers are attached to a schedule and are used to define promotional activities like product discounts, accruals and term upgrades. The offer definition process creates the needed qualifiers and modifiers in the Advanced Pricing Engine, which will impact the price of the item bought / shipping charge / order amount during the checkout process. Offers may be created on the Product tab in Oracle Marketing Online – this part of Oracle Marketing Online will be used by the Pricing Team, not by Marketing.

One-Off Event

An 'event' type object in Oracle Marketing Online, used to define an event taking place once, in one location only. This allows the user to create an Execution Event, without first having to create an Event (or a Campaign) plus a schedule.

Opportunity

A sales opportunity, created in OSO, OTS and other sales applications.

Oracle Advanced Outbound

A product used to preprocess marketing campaigns for Oracle Telesales.

Organization

A company (or other logical grouping of contacts) in the TCA Customer Master Files.

Owner

The name of the person within Oracle who owns and/or is responsible for the Oracle Marketing Online object (example the Owner of a message, or campaign).

Page

A logical entity describing a JSP template or an HTML page. In eMerchandising, Page identifies a placement.

PC

Product Catalog - part of the Marketing Encyclopedia System (MES).

Person

1. (1) A sub-tab under the main Audience tab.
2. (2) A contact in the TCA Customer Master Files.

Personalize

A function that allows an Oracle Marketing Online user to personalize many screens, to produce a listing of chosen columns only, and/or to filtered or select specific data only.

PHP

Personal Home Page – the first screen seen in Oracle Workflow.

Placement

An object representing a space on the site for displaying content. A placement is typically associated with a posting that defines the content to be displayed in the space. It contains the following information:

- Site (Example: iStore)
- Page on the site (Example: product details page)
- Location on the page (Example: top right corner)
- Style information (Example: Full Banner style)

POL

Partners On Line, a module in the e-Business Suite (earlier called PRM, Partner Relationship Management).

Portal

Marketing portal on Home tab. Provides access for users, for example, to download Deliverables attachments.

Posting

An object representing the way content is selected. There are two types of postings: the universal and the rule-based postings.

Product

1. (1) A main tab in Oracle Marketing Online, giving access to create and manage products, product hierarchies, and product pricing in the e-Business Suite.
2. (2) A value in several pick lists giving a choice of products. Messages, campaigns, events and deliverables may all be associated with specific products. See also Product Family.

Product Family

A value in several pick lists, giving a choice of products. Messages, campaigns, events and deliverables may all be associated with specific product families. See also Product.

Profile

1. (1) A link in Oracle Marketing Online, visible in all Oracle Marketing Online screens, giving access to the user profile screens.

-
2. (2) Any set of data describing an organization or person in the TCA customer master files.

Program (Oracle Marketing Online term and Oracle term)

1. Oracle Marketing Online Term: A rollup folder to group together campaigns and events. Any number of programs can be created, to produce a program hierarchy. Cost types and metrics from the subsidiary campaigns & schedules and events & schedules are rolled up in the program hierarchy.
2. Oracle Term: The Global Program is Oracle's choice of Marketing focus, defined and agreed at SVP level. The listing of Global Programs changes over time. LOVs under the 'Purpose' and 'Objective' fields in Oracle Marketing Online provide the current listing.

Purpose

A field seen on several Oracle Marketing Online objects. Note: The Purpose and Objective fields show the same LOV; all campaigns, events and schedules will have either a Purpose or Objective. In Oracle's internal Oracle Marketing Online implementation, these fields are used to show the Global Programs + other necessary values (Corp PR, Local, and so on).

RD.025 (High Level Business Process Models)

AIM Task – the RD025 describes the desired business processes, and identifies each of the steps for each process.

Reports

A sub Tab in Oracle Marketing Online, under the Home tab, giving access to out-of-the-box standard reports.

Requirements Document

See SRD

Response

A response can be any communication back from a customer or prospect. After qualification, a response can become a lead. A response that cannot be qualified as a lead can be further targeted with lead maturation programs.

ROI

Return on Investment.

Rollup Cost

A cost metric that is composed of, or calculated as a sum of, other cost metrics.

Rollup Metric

A metric that is composed of, or calculated as a sum of, other metrics.

Rule

A set of conditional statements, merchandising strategy and a rule priority. The merchandising strategy is triggered if all conditional statements are true.

Rule-based Posting

A rule-based posting consists of several rules. Use it to apply different merchandising strategies to different situations as described by the rules conditions.

Segment

A sub tab under Audience, segments represent specific sub-divisions of the total audience. See also Target Segment and Market Segment.

SIC

Standard Industrial Classification.

Side Navigation Bar

The main elements shown on the left hand frame in Oracle Marketing Online, which provide logical groupings of Cue Cards.

SLA

Service Level Agreement

Source Code

The unique code number assigned to each Campaign, Campaign Schedule, Event or Event Schedule within Oracle Marketing Online. Source Codes are associated with all interactions, and are used in lead management

SQL

Structured Query Language is a standard for querying. Often pronounced "Sequel" rather than "S Q L".

SRD

Software Requirements Document, produced by Product Management.

Status

Seen in many places within Oracle Marketing Online, the Status field shows where the campaign, event, schedule, deliverable is in the approvals process. Actual values within the pick list vary dependent upon the object. Typical values include:

- New
- Planned
- Pending Budget Approval
- Available
- Active
- Stopped (did have budget approved, now stopped and budget is returned)
- Cancelled
- Completed
- Closed
- Archived (a method to archive and 'hide' old objects in Oracle Marketing Online)
- Draft
- Final Loaded (for Deliverables only)

Style

Styles define the look and feel used to render content items that are displayed in a placement. Styles are associated with an XSL stylesheet that converts the XML output of the iMarketing engine into HTML.

Sub Tab(s)

A sub-division of some tabs, shown at the right on the blue line below the main tabs. In many parts of the application there are multiple sub tabs within each tab.

Tab(s)

The main tabs across the very top of all Oracle Marketing Online screens (Home, Product, Audience, Campaign, Event, Deliverable, Budget, Claim, Admin, Execution, Analytics, Calendar, and so on).

Target Products

Some campaigns may have target products associated with them (Example: a product discount), while others may not. Example: Oracle brand awareness campaign.

Targeting Conditions

Conditional statements used to target merchandising strategies to specific users. Targeting conditions may be based on the type of visitor, shopping cart total amount and belonging of a visitor to a segment or a list.

Trading Communities Architecture (TCA)

The E-Business model (or schema), containing the customer master files – i.e., the data about organizations, contacts, partners, vendors, relationships, and so on

UI

User Interface

Universal Posting

Unlike the rule-based postings, universal postings apply the same merchandising strategy to all the visitors. Note that nevertheless, the strategy may return different personalized content to different visitors.

URL

Universal resource locator; the full “name” of any web page.

Vision

A value used to define messages that specifically position Oracle’s overall vision; for example: ‘Oracle Software Powers the Internet’.

Web Page

The full URL of any web page that will provide further information on the activity to a customer or prospect.

Word Standardization (*sometimes referred to as Word Replacement*)

In order to successfully deduplicate a list (see Deduplication above), words such as street identifiers (Avenue = Ave), first names (William = Bill), and States (California = CA) will be temporarily standardized for the purposes of comparison. The use of Word Standardization does not change the text of the actual records. Names of organizations may similarly be temporarily standardized. Example 3M = Minnesota, Mining, Manufacturing Co; Corp = Corporation, and so on.

Workbook

A term used in Discoverer. A workbook represents selection criteria that will be applied against records in the database. Within Oracle Marketing Online, workbooks are used in List Building.

Workflow

Oracle Workflow is a foundation product using to track and relay approvals and notifications according to Business Rules.

Worksheet

A spreadsheet of Customers or Prospects, or both, extracted from a database by Oracle Discoverer.

YOY

Year over Year / Year on Year.

